

A

My name is Lisa.

I'm 22.

I'm not married.

My favorite color is blue.

My favorite sports are tennis and swimming.

I'm interested in art.

I'm American.
I'm from Chicago.

I'm a student.

My father is a doctor, and my mother is a journalist.

LISA

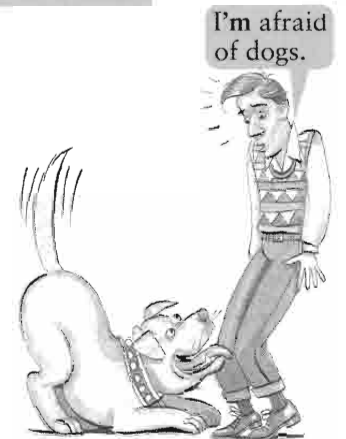
B

Positive

Negative

I	am	(I'm)	I	am not	(I'm not)
he	is	(he's)	he	is not	(he's not or he isn't)
she		(she's)	she		(she's not or she isn't)
it		(it's)	it		(it's not or it isn't)
we	are	(we're)	we	are not	(we're not or we aren't)
you		(you're)	you		(you're not or you aren't)
they		(they're)	they		(they're not or they aren't)

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is very tall. He's a policeman.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Mei Lan and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jessica isn't at home right now. She's at work.
- Those people aren't Canadian. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.



C

that's = that is there's = there is here's = here is

- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- "Here's your key." "Thank you."



Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (*she's / we aren't*, etc.).

1. she is she's 3. it is not _____ 5. I am not _____
2. they are _____ 4. that is _____ 6. you are not _____

1.2 Write *am, is, or are*.

1. The weather is nice today. 5. Look! There _____ Carol.
2. I am not tired. 6. My brother and I _____ good tennis players.
3. This bag _____ heavy. 7. Amy _____ at home. Her children _____ at school.
4. These bags _____ heavy. 8. I _____ a taxi driver. My sister _____ a nurse.

1.3 Write complete sentences. Use *is/isn't/are/aren't*.

1. (your shoes very dirty) Your shoes are very dirty.
2. (my brother a teacher) My _____
3. (this house not very big) _____
4. (the stores not open today) _____
5. (my keys in my bag) _____
6. (Jenny 18 years old) _____

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences (Section A). Write sentences about yourself.

1. (name?) My _____ 6. (favorite color or colors?) _____
2. (from?) I _____ My _____
3. (age?) I _____ 7. (interested in?) _____
4. (job?) I _____ I _____
5. (married?) I _____

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use these words:

afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty



1. He's thirsty. 3. He _____ 5. _____
2. They _____ 4. _____ 6. _____

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use *am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't*.

1. (I / interested in politics) I'm interested in politics. OR I'm not interested in politics.
2. (I / hungry) I _____
3. (it / warm today) It _____
4. (I / afraid of dogs) _____
5. (my hands / cold) _____
6. (Canada / a very big country) _____
7. (I / interested in soccer) _____
8. (Tokyo / in China) _____

A

Positive Question

I	am	am	I?
he		is	he?
she	is	is	she?
it			it?
we		are	we?
you	are	are	you?
they			they?



What's your name?

David.

Are you married?

No, I'm single.

How old are you?

25.

Are you a student?

Yes, I am.



DAVID

- "Am I late?" "No, you're on time."
- "Is your mother at home?" "No, she's out."
- "Are your parents at home?" "No, they're out."
- "Is it cold in your room?" "Yes, a little."
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:

- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (*not* Is at home your mother?)
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (*not* Are new your shoes?)

B

Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?

- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- "Where are you from?" "Canada."
- "What color is your car?" "It's red."
- "How old is Joe?" "He's 24."
- "How are your parents?" "They're fine."
- "Why are you angry?"
- "Because you're late."
- "How much are these postcards?"
- "Fifty cents."

where's = where is what's = what is who's = who is how's = how is

- Where's Sarah?
- What's the temperature?
- Who's that man?
- How's your father?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.	No,	I'm	not.	or	No,	he	isn't.
	he	is.		he's				she	
	she			she's				it	
it	are.	it's	we	aren't.					
we		you're	you						
you		they're	they						
they									

That's my seat.

No, it isn't.



- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I am."
- "Are you hungry?"
- "No, I'm not, but I'm thirsty."
- "Is your friend Japanese?" "Yes, he is."
- "Are these your keys?" "Yes, they are."
- "That's my seat." "No, it isn't."

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------------------|------------------------|----|----------|
| 1. | Where's the camera? | a) Toronto. | 1. | <u>g</u> |
| 2. | Is your car blue? | b) No, I'm not. | 2. | _____ |
| 3. | Is Nicole from Boston? | c) Yes, you are. | 3. | _____ |
| 4. | Am I late? | d) My sister. | 4. | _____ |
| 5. | Where's Anne from? | e) Black. | 5. | _____ |
| 6. | What color is your bag? | f) No, it's black. | 6. | _____ |
| 7. | Are you hungry? | g) In your bag. | 7. | _____ |
| 8. | Who's that woman? | h) No, she's Canadian. | 8. | _____ |

2.2 Write questions. Use *is* or *are*.

- (at home / your mother?) Is your mother at home?
- (interesting / your job?) _____
- (the stores / open today?) _____
- (interested in sports / you?) _____
- (near here / the post office?) _____
- (at school / your children?) _____
- (why / you / late?) _____

2.3 Write questions. Use *What/Who/Where/How . . . ?*. Read the answers first.

- | | | |
|----|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. | <u>How are</u> _____ your parents? | They're fine. |
| 2. | _____ the bus stop? | At the end of the block. |
| 3. | _____ your children? | Five, six, and ten. |
| 4. | _____ these oranges? | Seventy-nine cents a pound. |
| 5. | _____ your favorite sport? | Skiing. |
| 6. | _____ the man in this photograph? | That's my father. |
| 7. | _____ your new shoes? | Black. |

2.4 Write questions. Read the answers first.

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. | (name?) <u>What's your name?</u> | Paul. |
| 2. | (married or single?) _____ | I'm married. |
| 3. | (Australian?) _____ | No, I'm Canadian. |
| 4. | (how old?) _____ | I'm 30. |
| 5. | (a lawyer?) _____ | No, I'm a teacher. |
| 6. | (wife a teacher?) _____ | No, she's a lawyer. |
| 7. | (from?) _____ | She's Mexican. |
| 8. | (her name?) _____ | Ana. |
| 9. | (how old?) _____ | She's 27. |

2.5 Write true short answers (*Yes, I am.* / *No, he isn't.*, etc.).

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| 1. Are you married? | <u>No, I'm not.</u> | 4. Are your hands cold? | _____ |
| 2. Are you thirsty? | _____ | 5. Is it dark now? | _____ |
| 3. Is it cold today? | _____ | 6. Are you a teacher? | _____ |

A



She's eating.
She isn't reading.



It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.



They're running.
They aren't walking.

The *present continuous* is **am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing**, etc.

I	am (not)	-ing
he	is (not)	
she		
it		
we	are (not)	
you		
they		

- I'm working. I'm not watching TV.
- Chris is taking a bath.
- She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.)
- The phone is ringing.
- We're having dinner.
- You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening to me.)
- The children are doing their homework.

B

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening *now*

I'm working
she's wearing a hat
they're playing football
I'm not watching television

past

now

future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look at Michiko! She's wearing her new hat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. It's not raining.
- "Where are the children?" "They're playing in the park."
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can you call back later?
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

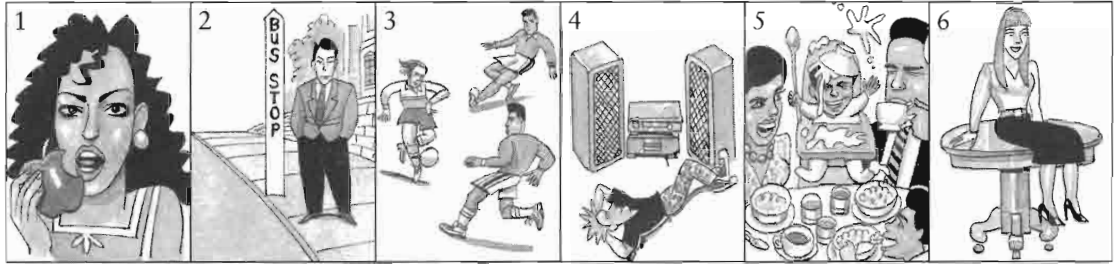
Spelling (see Appendix 5)

come → coming write → writing dance → dancing
run → running sit → sitting swim → swimming
lie → lying

Am/Is/Are Unit 1 Are you doing ... ? (Questions) Unit 4 I am doing and I do Unit 8
What are you doing tomorrow? Unit 26

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

eat have lie play sit wait



1. *She's eating* an apple. 4. _____ on the floor.
 2. He _____ for a bus. 5. _____ breakfast.
 3. They _____ soccer. 6. _____ on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs:

build cook leave stand stay swim take work

1. Please be quiet. I *'m working* _____ .
 2. "Where's John?" "He's in the kitchen. He _____ ."
 3. "You _____ on my foot." "Oh, I'm sorry."
 4. Look! Somebody _____ in the river.
 5. We're here on vacation. We _____ at the Far West Motel.
 6. "Where's Erin?" "She _____ a shower."
 7. They _____ a new hotel downtown.
 8. I _____ now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Emily. Use *She's -ing* or *She isn't -ing*.



1. (have dinner) *She isn't having dinner.*
 2. (watch television) *She's watching television.*
 3. (sit on the floor) She _____ .
 4. (read a book) _____ .
 5. (play the piano) _____ .
 6. (laugh) _____ .
 7. (wear a hat) _____ .
 8. (write a letter) _____ .

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) *I'm not washing my hair.*
 2. (it / snow) *It's snowing OR It isn't snowing.*
 3. (I / sit / on a chair) _____ .
 4. (I / eat) _____ .
 5. (it / rain) _____ .
 6. (I / study / English) _____ .
 7. (I / listen / to music) _____ .
 8. (the sun / shine) _____ .
 9. (I / wear / shoes) _____ .
 10. (I / read / a newspaper) _____ .

Are you doing . . . ? (Present Continuous Questions)

A

Positive

I	am	
he	is	doing
she		working
it		going
we	are	staying, etc.
you		
they		

Question

am	I	
is	he	doing?
	she	working?
	it	going?
are	we	staying?, etc.
	you	
	they	

What are you doing?



- "Are you feeling OK?" "Yes, I'm fine, thanks."
- "Is it raining?" "Yes, take an umbrella."
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- "What's Luis doing?" "He's reading the newspaper."
- "What are the children doing?" "They're watching television."
- Look, there's Hannah! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

B

Study the word order.

is/are + *subject* + -ing

	Is	he	working today?
Where	Is	Luis	working today? (<i>not</i> Is working Luis today?)
Where	are	they	going?
Where	are	those people	going? (<i>not</i> Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.	No,	I'm	not.	or	No,	he	isn't.
	he	is.		he's				she	
	she			it's				it	
it	are.	we're	we	aren't.					
we		you're	you						
you		they're	they						

- "Are you going now?" "Yes, I am."
- "Is Luis working today?" "Yes, he is."
- "Is it raining?" "No, it isn't."
- "Are your friends staying at a hotel?" "No, they aren't. They're staying with me."

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

<p>1 (you / watch / it?) <i>Are you watching it?</i></p> <p>No, you can turn it off.</p>	<p>2 (you / leave / now?)</p> <p>Yes, see you tomorrow.</p>	<p>3 (it / rain?)</p> <p>No, not right now.</p>
<p>4 (you / enjoy / the movie?)</p> <p>Yes, it's very funny.</p>	<p>5 (that clock / work?)</p> <p>No, it's broken.</p>	<p>6 (you / write / a letter?)</p> <p>Yes, to my parents.</p>

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use these words:

cry eat go laugh look at read

<p>1 What <i>are you reading</i> ?</p>	<p>2 Where she _____ ?</p>	<p>3 What _____ ?</p>
<p>4 Why _____ ?</p>	<p>5 What _____ ?</p>	<p>6 Why _____ ?</p>

4.3 Write questions with these words. Use *is* or *are* and put the words in order.

- (working / Luis / today?) *Is Luis working today?*
- (what / doing / the children?) *What are the children doing?*
- (you / listening / to me?) _____
- (where / going / your friends?) _____
- (your parents / television / watching?) _____
- (what / cooking / Jessica?) _____
- (why / you / looking / at me?) _____
- (coming / the bus?) _____

4.4 Write true short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't., etc.).

- Are you watching TV? *No, I'm not*
- Are you wearing a watch? _____
- Are you eating something? _____
- Is it raining? _____
- Are you sitting on the floor? _____
- Are you feeling all right? _____

A



They're looking at their books.
They read a lot.



He's drinking coffee.
He likes coffee.

they read / he likes / I work, etc. = the *simple present*

I/we/you/they	read	like	work	live	watch	do	have
he/she/it	reads	likes	works	lives	watches	does	has

Remember:

he works / she lives / it rains, etc.

- I work in an office. My brother works in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
- Anne lives in Canada. Her parents live in the U.S.
- It rains a lot in the winter.

he/she/it has

- John has lunch at home every day. (*not* John haves)

Spelling (see Appendix 5)

-es after -s/-sh/-ch	pass → passes	finish → finishes	watch → watches
-y → -ies	study → studies	try → tries	
and also	do → does	go → goes	

B

We use the simple present for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time.

- I like big cities.
- The stores open at 9 o'clock and close at 5:30.
- Mario works very hard. He starts at 7:30 and finishes at 8 o'clock at night.
- The earth goes around the sun.
- We do a lot of different things in our free time.
- It costs a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

C

always/never/often/sometimes/usually + simple present

- Sue always gets to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
- We often sleep late on weekends. (*not* We sleep often)
- I usually drive to work, but I sometimes walk.
- Julia never eats breakfast.

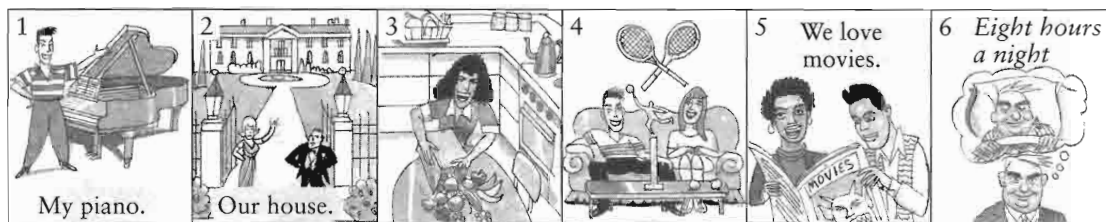
I don't ... Unit 6 *Do you ... ? (Questions)* Unit 7 *I am doing and I do* Unit 8
Always/usually/often, etc. Unit 95

5.1 Write these verbs + -s or -es.

1. (read) she reads 3. (fly) it _____ 5. (have) she _____
 2. (think) he _____ 4. (dance) he _____ 6. (finish) it _____

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs:

eat go live play play sleep



1. He plays the piano. 4. _____ tennis.
 2. They _____ in a very big house. 5. _____ to the movies a lot.
 3. _____ a lot of fruit. 6. _____ eight hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

boil close cost cost like like meet open speak teach wash

- Megan speaks four languages.
- Banks usually _____ at 9:00 in the morning.
- The Art Museum _____ at 5 o'clock in the afternoon.
- Isabel is a teacher. She _____ mathematics to young children.
- My job is very interesting. I _____ a lot of people.
- Peter _____ his hair every day.
- Food is expensive. It _____ a lot of money.
- Shoes are expensive. They _____ a lot of money.
- Water _____ at 100 degrees Celsius.
- Julia and I are good friends. I _____ her and she _____ me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Put the verb in the right form (arrive or arrives, etc.).

- (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
- (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) Julia _____.
- (work / Megan / hard / usually) _____.
- (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) _____.
- (dinner / we / have / always / at 6:30) _____.
- (television / Mario / watch / never) _____.
- (like / chocolate / children / usually) _____.
- (basketball / I / play / often / after work) _____.

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/sometimes/usually.

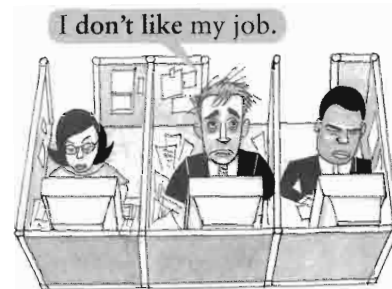
- (watch television) I usually watch television at night.
- (read in bed) I _____.
- (get up before 7 o'clock) _____.
- (go to work/school by bus) _____.
- (drink coffee) _____.

A

The *simple present negative* is don't/doesn't + verb.



She doesn't drink coffee.



He doesn't like his job.

Positive

Negative

I	work	I	work	work like do have
we	like	we	don't (do not)	
you	do	you	do (do not)	work like do have
they	have	they	do (do not)	
he	works	he	doesn't (does not)	work like do have
she	likes	she	doesn't (does not)	
it	does has	it	doesn't (does not)	

- I drink coffee, but I don't drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn't drink coffee.
- You don't work very hard.
- We don't watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn't rain very often.
- Jerry and Nicole don't know many people.

B

Remember:

I/we/you/they don't . . .
he/she/it doesn't . . .

- I don't like football.
- He doesn't like football.

- I don't like Fred, and Fred doesn't like me. (*not* Fred don't like)
- My car doesn't use much gas. (*not* My car don't use)
- Sometimes he's late, but it doesn't happen very often.

C

We use don't/doesn't + *base form* (don't like / doesn't speak / doesn't do, etc.).

- I don't like washing the car. I don't do it very often.
- Sandra speaks Spanish, but she doesn't speak Italian. (*not* doesn't speaks)
- Bill doesn't do his job very well. (*not* Bill doesn't his job)
- Paula doesn't usually have breakfast. (*not* doesn't . . . has)

6.1 Write negative sentences.

1. I play the piano very well. *I don't play the piano very well.*
2. Yuki plays the piano very well. Yuki _____.
3. They know my phone number. _____.
4. We work very hard. _____.
5. He has a car. _____.
6. You do the same thing every day. _____.

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.

Do you like ...



BILL & ROSE CAROL YOU

1. jazz?	yes	no	?
2. boxing?	no	yes	?
3. horror movies?	yes	no	?

1. *Bill and Rose like jazz.*
Carol _____
I _____ jazz.
2. Bill and Rose _____
Carol _____
I _____
3. _____

6.3 Write about yourself. Use I never ... or I ... a lot or I don't ... very often.

1. (watch TV) *I never watch TV.* OR *I watch TV a lot.* OR *I don't ... very often.*
2. (go to the theater) _____
3. (ride a bicycle) _____
4. (eat in restaurants) _____
5. (travel by train) _____

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + one of these verbs: cost go know read see use wear

1. I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I *don't read* _____ it.
2. Fu Chen has a car, but he _____ it very often.
3. They like films, but they _____ to the movies very often.
4. Amanda is married, but she _____ a ring.
5. I _____ much about science. I'm not interested in it.
6. It's not an expensive hotel. It _____ much to stay there.
7. Brian lives near us, but we _____ him very often.

6.5 Put the verb in the correct form, positive or negative.

1. Megan *speaks* four languages – English, Japanese, Arabic, and Spanish. (speak)
2. I *don't like* _____ my job. It's very boring. (like)
3. "Where's Mark?" "I'm sorry. I _____ ." (know)
4. Sue is a very quiet person. She _____ very much. (talk)
5. Jim _____ a lot of coffee. It's his favorite drink. (drink)
6. It's not true! I _____ it! (believe)
7. That's a very beautiful picture. I _____ it very much. (like)
8. Mark is a vegetarian. He _____ meat. (eat)

A

We use **do/does** in *simple present questions*.

Positive

Question

I we you they	work like do	do	I we you they	work? like? do?
he she it	works likes does	does	he she it	

Do you play the guitar?



B

Study the word order.

do/does + subject + base form

Where	Do	you	work	on Saturdays?
How often	Do	your friends	live	near here?
What	Does	Chris	play	tennis?
How much	do	your parents	live?	
	do	you	wash	your hair?
	does	this word	mean?	
	does	it	cost	to fly to Puerto Rico?

Questions with **always/usually/ever**

	Do	you	always	have	breakfast?
What	Does	Chris	ever	call	you?
	do	you	usually	do	on weekends?

What do you do? = What's your job?

- "What do you do?" "I work in a bank."

Remember:

do I/we/you/they . . .	■ Do they like music?
does he/she/it . . .	■ Does he like music?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they do. he/she/it does.	No,	I/we/you/they don't. he/she/it doesn't.
------	--------------------------------------	-----	--------------------------------------------

- "Do you play cards?" "No, I don't."
- "Do your parents speak English?" "Yes, they do."
- "Does Chol Soo work hard?" "Yes, he does."
- "Does your sister live in Vancouver?" "No, she doesn't."

7.1 Write questions with *Do ... ?* and *Does ... ?*

- I like chocolate. How about you? *Do you like chocolate?* _____
- I play tennis. How about you? _____ you _____ ?
- Paulo plays tennis. How about Lucia? _____ Lucia _____ ?
- You live near here. How about your friends? _____
- You speak English. How about your brother? _____
- I do yoga every morning. How about you? _____
- Sue often travels on business. How about Paul? _____
- I want to be famous. How about you? _____
- You work hard. How about Nicole? _____

7.2 Write questions. Use the words in parentheses () + *do/does*. Put the words in the right order.

- (where / live / your parents?) *Where do your parents live?* _____
- (you / early / always / get up?) *Do you always get up early?* _____
- (how often / TV / you / watch?) _____
- (you / want / what / for dinner?) _____
- (like / you / football?) _____
- (your brother / like / football?) _____
- (what / you / do / in your free time?) _____
- (your sister / work / where?) _____
- (to the movies / ever / you / go?) _____
- (what / mean / this word?) _____
- (ever / snow / it / here?) _____
- (go / usually / to bed / what time / you?) _____
- (how much / to call Mexico / it / cost?) _____
- (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what?) _____

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ do enjoy get like start teach work

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> What <i>do you do</i> _____ ? _____ it? What time _____ in the morning? _____ on Saturdays? How _____ to work? And your husband? What _____ ? Where _____ ? _____ his job? | <p>I work in a bookstore.
It's OK.
At 9 o'clock.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He's a teacher.
At Lincoln High School.
Yes, he loves it.</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

7.4 Write true short answers (*Yes, he does. / No, I don't., etc.*).

- Do you live in a big city? *No, I don't. OR Yes, I do.*
- Does it rain a lot where you live? _____
- Do your friends watch TV a lot? _____
- Do you ever ride a bicycle? _____
- Do you play the piano? _____

I am doing and I do (Present Continuous and Simple Present)

A

Jim is watching television.
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar.
He plays it often, and he plays very well.

Jim plays the guitar, but
he's not playing the guitar now.



Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn't. (*present continuous*)
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (*simple present*)

B

Present continuous (I am doing) = now, at the time of speaking

I'm doing

pastnowfuture

- Please be quiet. I'm **working**. (*not I work*)
- Tom is **taking** a shower right now. (*not Tom takes*)
- Take an umbrella with you. It's **raining**.
- You can turn off the television. I'm not **watching** it.
- Why are you under the table? What are you **doing**?

C

Simple present (I do) = in general, all the time or sometimes

I do

pastnowfuture

- I **work** every day, from 9 o'clock to 5:30.
- Tom **takes** a shower every morning.
- It **rains** a lot in the winter.
- I **don't watch** television very often.
- What **do** you usually do on weekends?

D

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (*I am -ing*):

like love want know understand remember depend
prefer hate need mean believe forget

Use only the simple present (*I want / do you like?*, etc.) with these verbs.

- I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not I'm wanting*)
- "Do you know that girl?" "Yes, but I **don't remember** her name."
- I **don't understand**. What do you mean?

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.



- Does he take photographs? Yes, he does. Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.
What's he doing? He's cooking.
- Is she driving a bus? _____ Does she drive a bus? _____
What's she doing? _____
- Does he wash windows? _____ Is he washing a window? _____
What's he doing? _____
- Are they teaching? _____ Do they teach? _____
What do they do? _____

8.2 Write am/is/are or do/don't/does/doesn't.

- Excuse me, do you speak English?
- "Where's Marta?" "I _____ know."
- What's so funny? Why _____ you laughing?
- "What _____ your sister do?" "She's a dentist."
- It _____ raining. I _____ want to go out in the rain.
- "Where _____ you come from?" "Canada."
- How much _____ it cost to send a letter to Canada?
- Steve is a good tennis player, but he _____ play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the simple present (I do).

- Excuse me, do you speak English? (you / speak)
- "Where's Tom?" "He's taking a shower." (he / take)
- I don't watch television very often. (I / not / watch)
- Listen! Somebody _____. (sing)
- Sandra is tired. _____ to go home now. (she / want)
- How often _____ a newspaper? (you / read)
- "Excuse me, but _____ in my place." "Oh, I'm sorry." (you / sit)
- I'm sorry, _____. Can you speak more slowly?
(I / not / understand)
- It's late. _____ home now. (I / go)
_____ with me? (you / come)
- What time _____ work every day? (your father / finish)
- You can turn off the radio. _____ to it. (I / not / listen)
- "Where's Paul?" "In the kitchen. _____ something." (he / cook)
- Tony _____ to work. (not / usually / drive)
He _____. (usually / walk)
- Achara _____ coffee. (not / like) _____ tea. (she / prefer)

A

You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got.

I	have	or	I	have got	(I've got)
we			we		(we've got)
you			you		(you've got)
they			they		(they've got)
he	has	or	he	has got	(he's got)
she			she		(she's got)
it			it		(it's got)



- I have blue eyes. or I've got blue eyes.
- The house has six bedrooms. or The house has got six bedrooms.
- Li Jing isn't feeling well. She has a headache. or She's got a headache.
- They have a horse, three dogs, and six cats. or They've got a horse ...

B

I don't have / I haven't got, etc. (negative)

You can say:

I/we/you/they	don't	have	or	I/we/you/they	haven't	got
he/she/it	doesn't			he/she/it	hasn't	

- I have a bike, but I don't have a car. or I've got a bike, but I haven't got a car.
- Mr. and Mrs. Harris don't have any children. or ... haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house, but it doesn't have a garage. or ... it hasn't got a garage.
- Mariko doesn't have a job. or Mariko hasn't got a job.

C

Do you have ... ? / Have you got ... ?, etc. (questions)

You can say:

do	I/we/you/they	have?	or	have	I/we/you/they	got?
does	he/she/it			has	he/she/it	

- Do you have a camera? or Have you got a camera?
- Does Anne have a car? or Has Anne got a car?
- What kind of car does she have? or What kind of car has she got?
- What do you have in your bag? or What have you got in your bag?

D

Short answers

- "Do you have a camera?" "Yes, I do." / "No, I don't." or "Have you got a camera?" "Yes, I have." / "No, I haven't."
- "Does Anne have a car?" "Yes, she does." / "No, she doesn't." or "Has Anne got a car?" "Yes, she has." / "No, she hasn't."

9.1 Rewrite these sentences with *got* (*have got* / *hasn't got* / *have ... got?*, etc.).

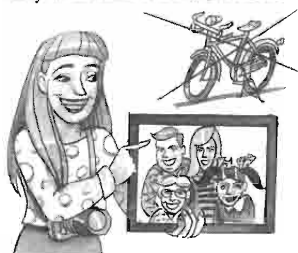
1. They have a car. *They've got a car.* _____
2. Bill has a headache. _____
3. I don't have any free time. _____
4. Do you have a watch? _____
5. We have a lot of work at the office now. _____
6. My brother doesn't have a college degree. _____

Now rewrite these sentences without *got*. Use *have* / *doesn't have* / *do ... have?*, etc.

7. Yoshi hasn't got time to go with us. *Yoshi doesn't have time to go with us.* _____
8. You've got a phone call from Japan. _____
9. Have you got any aspirin? _____
10. Sara hasn't got much money. _____
11. Have your parents got any friends in Hawaii? _____

9.2 Write about Tina and you. Use *has got* / *hasn't got* / *have got* / *haven't got*.

My brothers and sisters.



TINA

1. (a camera) *Tina has got a camera.* _____
I've got a camera. OR I haven't got _____
2. (a bicycle) Tina _____
I _____
3. (long hair) _____
4. (brothers / sisters) _____

9.3 Complete the sentences. Use *have/has* or *don't have* / *doesn't have* + one of these:

a big yard	a key	a toothache	much time
a headache	a lot of friends	four wheels	

1. I'm not feeling very well. I *have a headache* _____.
2. It's a nice house, but it *doesn't have a big yard* _____.
3. Most cars _____.
4. Everybody likes Tom. He _____.
5. I'm going to the dentist this morning. I _____.
6. He can't open the door. He _____.
7. Hurry! We _____.

9.4 Complete the sentences with *do*, *doesn't*, *don't*, *got*, *has*, or *have*.

1. Sarah hasn't *got* _____ a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2. They like animals. They *have* _____ three dogs and two cats.
3. Ryan isn't happy. He _____ got a lot of problems.
4. _____ you have change for a dollar?
5. They don't read much. They _____ have many books.
6. "What's wrong?" "I've _____ something in my eye."
7. "Where's my pen?" "I don't know. I don't _____ it."
8. Julia wants to go to the concert, but she _____ have a ticket.
9. _____ you got a minute to help me?

A



Now Arturo is at work.
At midnight last night he **wasn't** at work.
He was in bed.
He was asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past)

- I **am** tired. (now)
- Where **is** Beth? (now)
- The weather **is** nice today.

- I **was** tired last night.
- Where **was** Beth yesterday?
- The weather **was** nice last week.

are (present) → were (past)

- You **are** late. (now)
- They **aren't** here. (now)

- You **were** late yesterday.
- They **weren't** here last Sunday.

B

Positive

Negative

Question

I he she it	was	I he she it	was not (wasn't)	was	I? he? she? it?
we you they	were	we you they	were not (weren't)	were	we? you? they?

- Last year Amy **was** 22, so she's 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** afraid of dogs.
- We **were** hungry after the trip, but we **weren't** tired.
- The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.
- **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on vacation?
- Those shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **were** you late this morning?

C

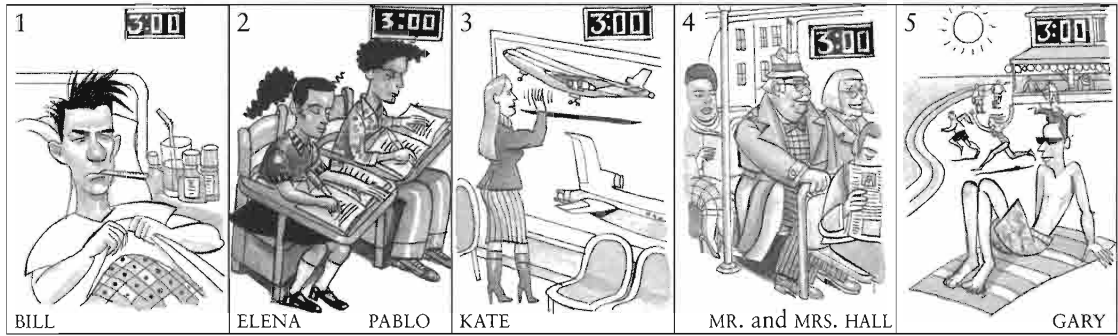
Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it was. we/you/they were.	No,	I/he/she/it wasn't. we/you/they weren't.
------	---------------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------------------

- "Were you late?" "No, I **wasn't**."
- "Was Scott at work yesterday?" "Yes, he **was**."
- "Were Amy and Matt at the party?" "No, they **weren't**."

Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? Where were you?



1. *Bill was* in *bed* . 4. _____ on _____ .
 2. Elena and Pablo _____ at _____ . 5. _____ at _____ .
 3. Kate _____ at _____ . 6. And you? I _____ .

10.2 Write *am/is/are* (present) or *was/were* (past).

- Last year she *was* _____ 22, so she *is* _____ 23 now.
- Today the weather _____ nice, but yesterday it _____ very cold.
- I _____ hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- I feel fine this morning, but I _____ very tired last night.
- Where _____ you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
- Don't buy those shoes. They _____ very expensive.
- I like your new jacket. _____ it expensive?
- "Where _____ the children?" "I don't know. They _____ here ten minutes ago."

10.3 Write *was/wasn't* or *were/weren't*.

- We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room *was* very small, and it *wasn't* very clean.
- Bill _____ at work last week because he _____ sick. He's better now.
- Yesterday _____ a holiday, so the banks _____ closed. They're open today.
- "_____ Kate and John at the party?" "Kate _____ there, but John _____."
- "Where are my keys?" "I don't know. They _____ on the table, but they're not there now."
- You _____ at home last night. Where _____ you?

10.4 Write questions. Use the words in parentheses () in the correct order + *was/were*.

- (late / you / this morning / why?) *Why were you late this morning?*
- (hard / your exam?) _____
- (last week / where / Beth and Bill?) _____
- (angry / you / yesterday / why?) _____
- (nice / the weather / last week?) _____

The traffic was bad.

No, it was easy.

They were on vacation.

Because you were late.

Yes, it was beautiful.

A

They **watch** television every night.
(*simple present*)

They **watched** television last night.
(*simple past*)

Watched is the *simple past*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	watched
----------------------------	----------------



B

The *simple past* is often *-ed* (*regular verbs*). For example:

work → worked	dance → danced
clean → cleaned	stay → stayed
start → started	need → needed

- I brush my teeth every morning. This morning I **brushed** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1987 to 1998.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and talked to a lot of people. The party **ended** at midnight.

Spelling (see Appendix 5)

try → tried	study → studied	copy → copied
stop → stopped	plan → planned	

C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). Their simple past is not *-ed*. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendixes 2–3).

begin → began	fall → fell	leave → left	sell → sold
break broke	find found	lose lost	sit sat
bring brought	fly flew	make made	sleep slept
build built	forget forgot	meet met	speak spoke
buy bought	get got	pay paid	stand stood
catch caught	give gave	put put	take took
come came	go went	read read*	tell told
do did	have had	ring rang	think thought
drink drank	hear heard	say said	win won
eat ate	know knew	see saw	write wrote

* pronounced "red"

- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9:30.
- Caroline **went** to the movies three times last week.
- Ampol **came** into the room, **took** off his coat, and **sat** down.

Exercises

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs in the simple past:

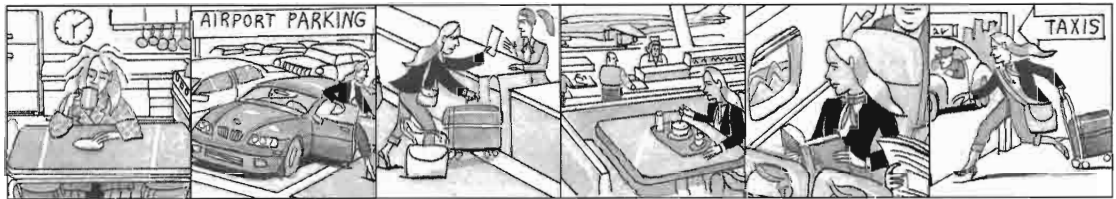
brush die enjoy end happen rain start stay want

- I brushed my teeth three times yesterday.
- The concert _____ at 7:30 and _____ at 10 o'clock.
- When I was a child, I _____ to be a doctor.
- The accident _____ last Sunday afternoon.
- It's a nice day today, but yesterday it _____ all day.
- We _____ our vacation last year. We _____ at a very nice hotel.
- Amy's grandfather _____ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the simple past of these verbs:

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. get <u>got</u> | 4. pay _____ | 7. go _____ | 10. know _____ |
| 2. see _____ | 5. visit _____ | 8. think _____ | 11. put _____ |
| 3. play _____ | 6. buy _____ | 9. copy _____ | 12. speak _____ |

11.3 Read about Anna's trip to Mexico City. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday Anna (1) flew from Los Angeles to Mexico City. She (2) _____ up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) _____ a cup of coffee. At 7:15 she (4) _____ home and (5) _____ to the airport. When she (6) _____, she (7) _____ the car and then (8) _____ to the ticket counter, where she (9) _____ in for her flight. Then she (10) _____ breakfast at an airport cafe and (11) _____ for her flight. The plane (12) _____ on time and (13) _____ in Mexico City four hours later. Finally, she (14) _____ a taxi to her hotel.

(fly)
(get)
(have) (leave)
(drive)
(arrive) (park)
(go) (check)
(have)
(wait)
(depart) (arrive)
(take)

11.4 Write sentences about the past.

- Jim always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car.
- Mei Lan often loses her keys. She _____ last week.
- Kate meets her friends every night. She _____ last night.
- I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I _____.
- We usually go to the movies on Sundays. Last Sunday we _____.
- I eat an apple every day. Yesterday I _____.
- Taro always takes a shower in the morning. This morning he _____.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

- I played volleyball yesterday.
- _____
- _____
- _____

I didn't . . . Did you . . . ? (Simple Past Negative and Questions)

A

We use **did** in *simple past negatives* and *questions*.

Base form	Positive	Negative	Question
play	I played	I	play?
start	we started	we	start?
watch	you watched	you	watch?
have	they had	they	have?
see	he saw	he	see?
do	she did	she	do?
go	it went	it	go?
		did not (didn't)	did

B

do/does (present) → did (past)

- I **don't** watch television very often.
- I **didn't** watch television yesterday.
- Does she go out often?
- Did she go out last night?

C

We use **did/didn't + base form** (watch/play/go, etc.)

Positive → Negative

I watched → I **didn't** watch (*not* I didn't watched)
 he had → he **didn't** have
 they went → **did** they go? (*not* did they went?)
 you did → **did** you do?

- I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't** win.
- "Did you **do** your homework?" "No, I **didn't** have time."
- We **went** to the movies, but we **didn't** enjoy the film.

D

Study the word order in questions:

did + subject + base form

What	Did	your sister	call	you?
How	did	you	do	last night?
Where	did	the accident	happen?	
	did	your parents	go	for vacation?

E

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	did.	No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	didn't.
------	----------------------------	-------------	-----	----------------------------	----------------

- "Did you see Joe yesterday?" "No, I **didn't**."
- "Did it rain on Sunday?" "Yes, it **did**."
- "Did Helen come to the party?" "No, she **didn't**."
- "Did your parents have a good trip?" "Yes, they **did**."

12.1 Complete these sentences. Use *didn't*.

- I saw Barbara, but I *didn't see* _____ Mariana.
- They worked on Monday, but they _____ on Tuesday.
- We went to the post office, but we _____ to the bank.
- She had a pen, but she _____ any paper.
- Brian did some work in the yard, but he _____ any work in the house.

12.2 Write questions with *Did* . . . ?

- I watched TV last night. How about you? *Did you watch TV last night?* _____
- I enjoyed the party. How about you? _____
- I had a nice vacation. How about you? _____
- I finished work early. How about you? _____
- I slept well last night. How about you? _____

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write true sentences, positive or negative.

- (watch TV) *I watched TV. OR I didn't watch TV.* _____
- (get up before 7 o'clock) I _____.
- (take a shower) _____
- (buy a magazine) _____
- (eat meat) _____
- (go to bed before 10:30) _____

12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

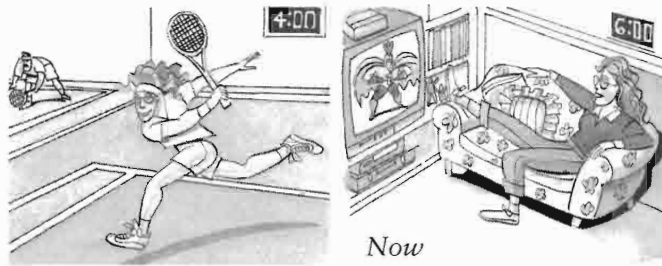
cost get to work go go to bed late happen have a nice time stay win

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: We went to Vancouver last month.
B: Where <i>did you stay</i> _____ ?
A: With some friends. | 5. A: We came home by taxi.
B: How much _____ ?
A: Ten dollars. |
| 2. A: I was late this morning.
B: What time _____ ?
A: Half past nine. | 6. A: I'm tired this morning.
B: _____
A: No, but I didn't sleep very well. |
| 3. A: I played tennis this afternoon.
B: _____
A: No, I lost. | 7. A: We went to the beach yesterday.
B: _____
A: Yes, it was great. |
| 4. A: I had a nice vacation.
B: Good. Where _____ ?
A: To the mountains. | 8. A: The window is broken.
B: How _____ ?
A: I don't know. |

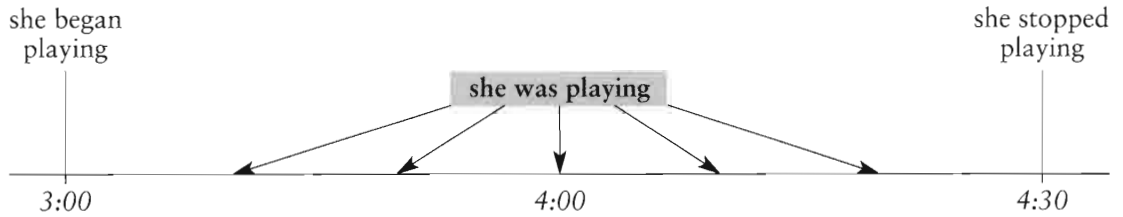
12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative, or question.

- We went to the movies, but the film wasn't very good. We *didn't enjoy* it. (enjoy)
- Tim _____ some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket, and a sweater. (buy)
- "_____ yesterday?" "No, it was a nice day." (rain)
- We were tired, so we _____ long at the party. (stay)
- It was very warm in the room, so I _____ a window. (open)
- "Did you go to the bank this morning?" "No, I _____ time." (have)
- "I cut my hand this morning." "How _____ that?" (do)

A



It's 6 o'clock now.
Kelly is at home.
She is watching television.
At 4 o'clock she wasn't at home.
She was at the tennis club.
She was playing tennis.
She wasn't watching television.



B

Was/were + -ing is the *past continuous*.

Positive

Negative

Question

I he she it	was	doing watching playing running living (etc.)	I he she it	wasn't (was not)	doing watching playing running living (etc.)	was	I he she it	doing? watching? playing? running? living? (etc.)
we you they	were		we you they	weren't (were not)		were	we you they	

- What were you doing at 11:30 yesterday? Were you working?
- "What did he say?" "I don't know. I wasn't listening."
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- In 1994 we were living in Japan.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing pants.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining, and the birds were singing.

Spelling (see Appendix 5)

live → living run → running lie → lying

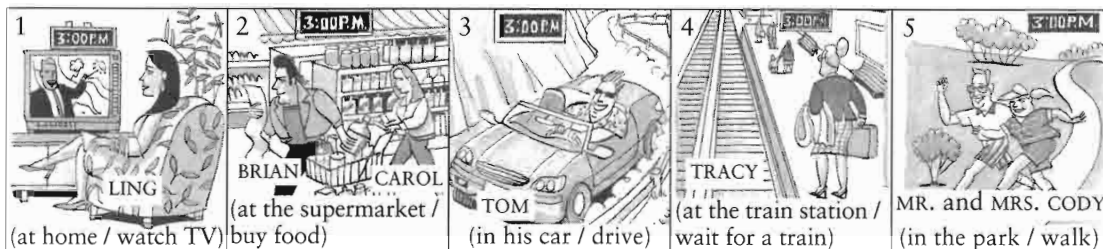
C

am/is/are + -ing (*present*) → was/were + -ing (*past*)

- I'm working (now).
- It isn't raining (now).
- What are you doing (now)?
- I was working at 10:30 last night.
- It wasn't raining when we went out.
- What were you doing at three o'clock?

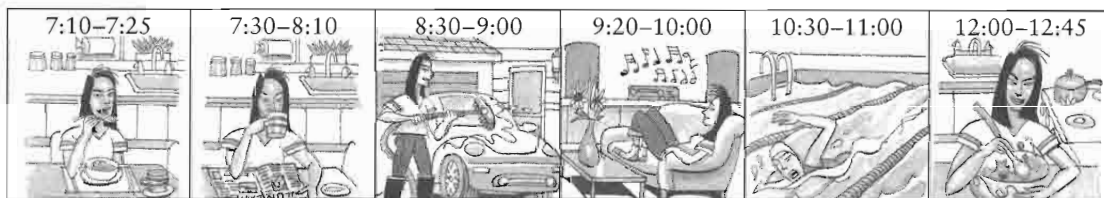
Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? What were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



1. *Ling was at home. She was watching TV.*
2. Carol and Brian _____ . They _____ .
3. Tom _____ .
4. _____ .
5. _____ .
6. And you? I _____ .

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures, and complete the sentences.



1. At 8:45 *she was washing her car* .
2. At 10:45 she _____ .
3. At 8 o'clock _____ .
4. At 12:10 _____ .
5. At 7:15 _____ .
6. At 9:30 _____ .

13.3 Complete the questions. Use *was/were -ing*. Use *what/where/why* if necessary.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. (you / live) | <i>Where were you living</i> _____ in 1990? | In Brazil. |
| 2. (you / do) | _____ at 2 o'clock? | I was asleep. |
| 3. (it / rain) | _____ when you got up? | No, it was sunny. |
| 4. (Ann / drive) | _____ so fast? | Because she was late. |
| 5. (Lee / wear) | _____ a suit yesterday? | No, jeans. |

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



1. (wear / a jacket) *He wasn't wearing a jacket.*
2. (carry / a bag) _____
3. (go / to the dentist) _____
4. (eat / an ice cream cone) _____
5. (carry / an umbrella) _____
6. (go / home) _____
7. (wear / a hat) _____
8. (ride / a bicycle) _____

I was doing and I did (Past Continuous and Simple Past)

A



Eric was reading a book.



The phone rang.



He stopped reading.



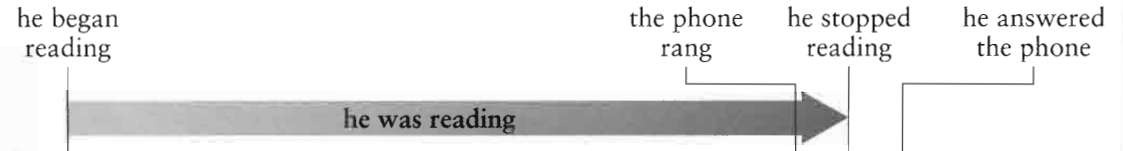
He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (*simple past*)

What was Eric doing when the phone rang?
He was reading a book. } (*past continuous*)

What did he do when the phone rang?
He stopped reading and answered the phone. } (*simple past*)

Eric began reading before the phone rang.
So *when* the phone rang, he was reading.



B

Simple past

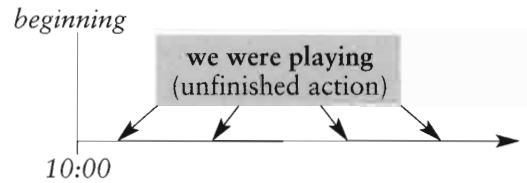
- A: What did you do yesterday morning?
B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11:30)



- Eric read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- Did you watch the movie on television last night?
- It didn't rain while we were on vacation.

Past continuous

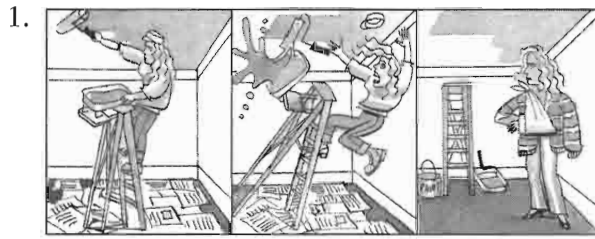
- A: What were you doing at 10:30?
B: We were playing tennis.



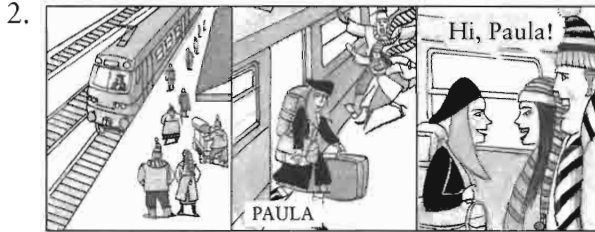
- Eric was reading a book when the phone rang.
- Were you watching television when I called you?
- It wasn't raining when I got up.

- I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4:30. At 2:30 I was working.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Mi Ja fell asleep while she was reading.

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the past continuous or simple past.



1. Linda *broke* _____ (break) her arm last week. It _____ (happen) when she _____ (paint) her room. She _____ (fall) off the ladder.



2. The train _____ (arrive) at the station, and Paula _____ (get) off. Two friends of hers, John and Jenny, _____ (wait) to meet her.



3. Yesterday Sue _____ (walk) down the street when she _____ (meet) Jim. He _____ (go) home, and he _____ (carry) a bag. They _____ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

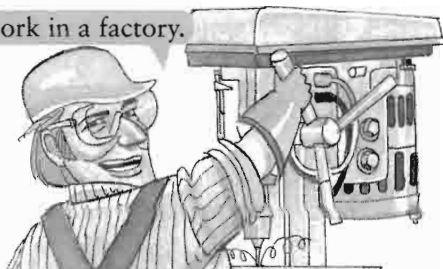
14.2 Put the verb in the past continuous or simple past.

1. A: What *were you doing* (you / do) when the phone *rang* (ring)?
B: I *was watching* (watch) television.
2. A: Was Tracy busy when you went to see her?
B: Yes, she _____ (study).
3. A: What time _____ (the mail / come) this morning?
B: It _____ (come) while I _____ (have) breakfast.
4. A: Was Megan at work today?
B: No, she _____ (not / go) to work. She was sick.
5. A: How fast _____ (you / drive) when the police _____ (stop) you?
B: I don't know exactly, but I _____ (not / drive) very fast.
6. A: _____ (your team / win) the baseball game yesterday?
B: No, the weather was very bad, so we _____ (not / play).
7. A: How _____ (you / break) the window?
B: We _____ (play) baseball. I _____ (hit) the ball, and it _____ (break) the window.
8. A: _____ (you / see) Judy last night?
B: Yes, she _____ (wear) a long dress.
9. A: What _____ (you / do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
B: I was asleep.
10. A: I _____ (lose) my key last night.
B: How _____ (you / get) into your apartment?
A: I _____ (climb) in through a window.

A

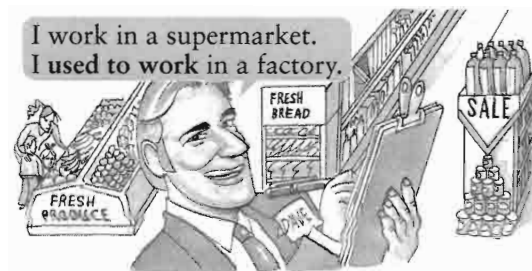
DAVE a few years ago

I work in a factory.



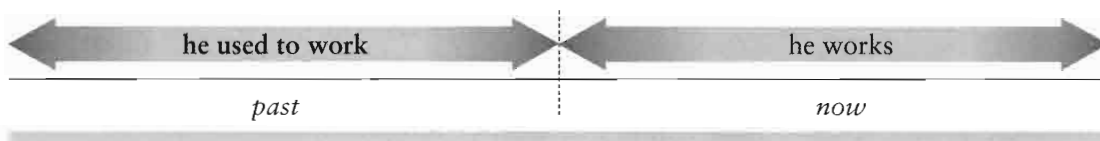
DAVE today

I work in a supermarket.
I used to work in a factory.



Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory = he worked in a factory in the past, but he doesn't work there now



B

You can say I used to work . . . / she used to have . . . / they used to be . . . , etc.

I/you/we/they he/she/it	used to	be work have play (etc.)
----------------------------	---------	--------------------------------------

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- They used to live on the same block as us, so we used to see them often. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Amy used to have a piano, but she sold it when she moved.

The negative is I didn't use to . . .

- When I was a child, I didn't use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to . . . ?

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

I used to have very long hair.



C

We use used to . . . only for the past. You cannot say "I use to . . ." (present).

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf.)
- We usually get up early. (not We use to get up early.)

Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with *used to*

Now A few years ago



1. *She used to have long hair.*

Now When I was younger . . .



2. He _____ baseball.

Now A few years ago



3. _____ a taxi driver.

We live in Denver now.



Our house in Dallas 20 years ago.

4. _____ in Dallas.

Now This is me 20 years ago.
I never wear glasses now.



5. _____

Now A long time ago



6. This building _____

15.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, her life was different.

KAREN a few years ago

KAREN now

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Do you play any sports? | Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball. |
| Do you go out much? | Yes, three or four nights a week. |
| Do you play a musical instrument? | Yes, the guitar. |
| Do you like to read? | Yes, I read a lot. |
| Do you travel much? | Yes, I take two or three trips a year. |



I work very hard at my job. I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with *used to*

1. *She used to swim every day.* 4. _____
2. She _____ . 5. _____
3. _____ 6. _____

15.3 Complete these sentences. Use *used to* or the simple present (*I play / he lives*, etc.).

- I *used to play* _____ tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
- "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I *play* _____ basketball."
- "Do you have a car?" "No, I _____ one, but I sold it."
- Fu Chen _____ a waiter. Now he's the manager of a restaurant.
- "Do you go to work by car?" "Sometimes, but usually I _____ by train."
- When I was a child, I never _____ vegetables, but I eat them now.
- Suree loves to watch TV. She _____ TV every night.
- We _____ near the airport, but we moved to the city a few years ago.
- Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I _____ up very early.
- What games _____ you _____ when you were a child?

A



Have you been to Mexico City?

Yes, I have. Many times.

Have you ever driven a car there?

No, I've never driven in Mexico City.



Have been / have driven / have played, etc., is the *present perfect* (have + past participle).

I	have ('ve) have not (haven't)	played	have	I	played?	} Regular verbs
we		lived		we	lived?	
you		visited		you	visited?	
they	has ('s) has not (hasn't)	read	has	he	lost?	} Irregular verbs
he		lost		she	been?	
she		been		it	flown?	
it		flown				

Regular verbs: The past participle is -ed (the same as the simple past).

play → we have played live → I have lived visit → she has visited

Irregular verbs: The past participle is sometimes the same as the simple past.

buy → I bought / I have bought have → he had / he has had

Sometimes it is different (see Appendixes 2–3).

break → I broke / I have broken see → you saw / you have seen

B

We use the present perfect when we talk about a time from the past until now, for example, a person's life.

Have you ever been to Japan?

past

now

- "Have you been to France?" (in your life) "No, I haven't."
- We've been to Canada, but we haven't been to Alaska.
- Mary has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I've seen that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- "Have you read this book?" "Yes, I've read it twice." (twice = two times)

C

Present perfect + ever (in questions) and never

- "Has Amy ever been to Australia?" "Yes, once." (once = one time)
- "Have you ever played golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
- My mother has never traveled by plane.
- I've never ridden a horse.
- "Who is that man?" "I don't know. I've never seen him before."

Exercises

16.1 You are asking Angela questions. Write the questions. Begin with *Have you ever ... ?*



1. (Montreal?)
2. (play / golf?)
3. (Australia?)
4. (lose / your passport?)
5. (fly / in a helicopter?)
6. (eat / Chinese food?)
7. (London?)
8. (drive / a bus?)

<i>Have you ever been to Montreal?</i>	
<i>Have you ever played golf?</i>	
Have _____?	

- No, never.
Yes, many times.
No, never.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
Yes, twice.
No, never.

16.2 Look at Angela's answers in Exercise 16.1. Write sentences about Angela.

1. (London) *Angela has been to London twice.* _____
2. (Australia) She _____
3. (Chinese food) _____
4. (drive / a bus) _____

Now write about yourself. How many times have you done these things?

5. (London) I _____
6. (play / tennis) _____
7. (fly / in a helicopter) _____

16.3 Mary is 85 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?



be	meet
do	travel
have	write

all over the world	many different jobs
a lot of interesting people	married three times
a lot of interesting things	ten books

1. *She has had many different jobs.* _____
2. She _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

16.4 Put the verbs in the present perfect.

1. *I've seen* _____ (I / see) that woman before, but I can't remember where.
2. "*Have you ever played* (you / ever / play) golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
3. "*_____* (you / ever / write) a poem?" "Yes, in high school."
4. "Does Emma know Sam?" "No, _____ (she / never / meet) him."
5. Ann and Eli have lots of books, and _____ (they / read) all of them.
6. _____ (I / never / be) to Australia, but _____ (my brother / be) there twice.
7. Joy's favorite film is *Howard and Belinda*. _____ (she / see) it five times, but _____ (I / never / see) it.
8. _____ (I / travel) by plane, bus, and train. Someday, I want to take a trip by boat.

A

Susan is on vacation in New York.
She is there now.

She arrived in New York on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long has she been in New York?

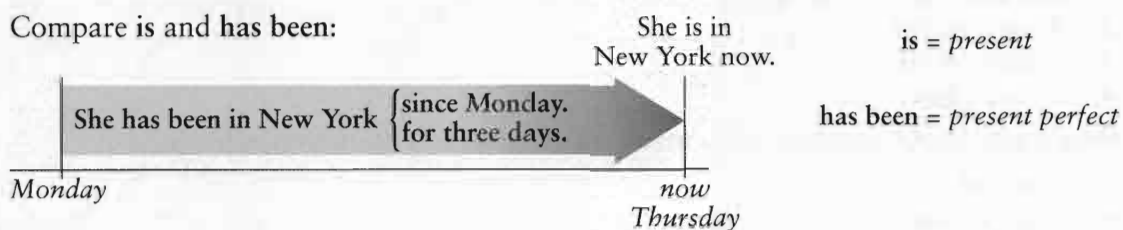
She has been in New York { since Monday.
for three days.

How long have you
been in New York?

Since Monday.



Compare is and has been:



B

Compare:

Simple present

- Dan and Kate are married.
- Are you married?
- Do you know Lynn?
- I know Lynn.
- Vera lives in Brasilia.
- I have a car.

Present perfect

- They have been married for five years.
(not They are married for five years.)
- How long have you been married?
(not How long are you married?)
- How long have you known her?
(not How long do you know her?)
- I've known her for a long time.
(not I know her for a long time.)
- How long has she lived in Brasilia?
She has lived there all her life.
- How long have you had your car?
I've had it since April.

Present continuous

- I'm studying German.
- Bruce is watching TV.
- It's raining.

Present perfect continuous

- How long have you been studying German?
(not How long are you studying German?)
I've been studying German for two years.
- How long has he been watching TV?
He's been watching TV since 5 o'clock.
(he's been = he has been)
- It's been raining all day. (it's been = it has been)

17.1 Complete these sentences.

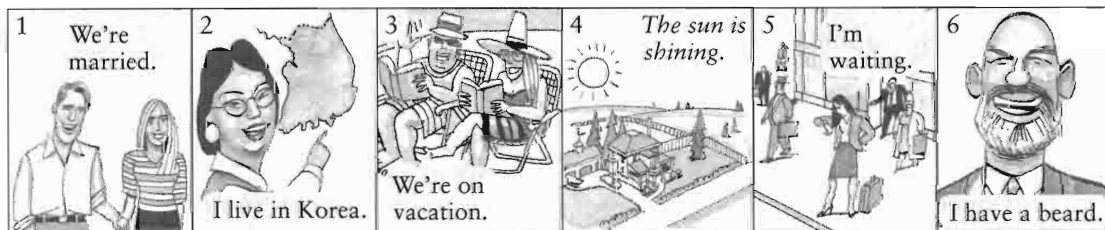
- Susan is in New York. She *has been* _____ there since Monday.
- I know Isabel. I *have known* _____ her for a long time.
- Nancy and Seth are married. They _____ married since 1997.
- Bill is sick. He _____ sick for the last few days.
- We live on Main Street. We _____ there for ten years.
- Chris works in a bank. She _____ in a bank for five years.
- Andy has a headache. He _____ a headache since he got up this morning.
- I'm studying English. I _____ English for six months.

17.2 Write questions with *How long . . . ?*

- Susan is on vacation.
- Seth and Nancy are in Canada.
- I know Amy.
- Diana is studying Italian.
- My brother lives in Seattle.
- I'm a teacher.
- It is raining.

	<i>How long has she been on vacation?</i>
How long _____ ?	
How long _____ you _____ ?	

17.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

all day all her life for ten minutes ~~for ten years~~ since he was 20 since Sunday

- They have been married for ten years.*
- She _____ .
- They _____ .
- The sun _____ .
- She _____ .
- He _____ .

17.4 Which is right?

- Vinai lives / has lived in Canada since 1999. (*has lived* is right)
- Ruth is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her very well.
- Ruth is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her for a long time.
- "Sorry I'm late. How long are you / have you been waiting?" "Only five minutes."
- Ted works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
- Amy is reading the newspaper. She is / has been reading it for two hours.
- "How long do you live / have you lived in this house?" "About ten years."
- "Is that a new coat?" "No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time."
- Ed is / has been in Seattle right now. He is / has been there for the last three days.

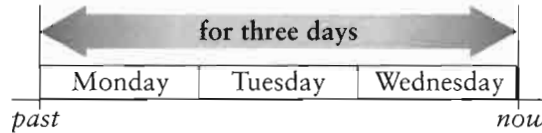
A

for and since

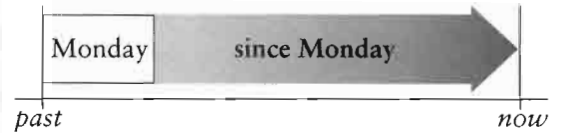
We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*.

- Rachel is in Brazil. She **has been** there } **for three days.**
since Monday.

We use **for** + a period of time (three days / two years, etc.).



We use **since** + the start of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock, etc.).



for

three days	ten minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- Richard has been in Canada **for six months.** (*not* since six months)
- We've been waiting **for two hours.** (*not* since two hours)
- I've lived in Chicago **for a long time.**

since

Monday	Wednesday
9 o'clock	12:30
July 4th	my birthday
January	I was ten years old
1995	we arrived

- Richard has been in Canada **since January.** (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9 o'clock.** (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in Chicago **since I was ten years old.**

B

ago

ago = before now

- Ji Yoo started her new job **three weeks ago.** (= three weeks before now)
- "When did Tom go out?" "Ten minutes **ago.**" (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago.**
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago.**

We use **ago** with the *past* (started/did/had/was, etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did Rachel arrive in Brazil?**
She **arrived** in Brazil **three days ago.**
- **How long has she been in Brazil?**
She **has been** in Brazil **for three days.**

18.1 Write *for* or *since*.

- Rachel has been in Brazil *since* _____ Monday.
- Rachel has been in Brazil *for* _____ three days.
- My aunt has lived in Australia _____ 15 years.
- Jennifer is in her office. She has been there _____ 7 o'clock.
- Mexico has been an independent country _____ 1821.
- The bus is late. We've been waiting _____ 20 minutes.
- Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty _____ many years.
- Luis has been sick _____ a long time. He has been in the hospital _____ October.

18.2 Answer these questions. Use *ago*.

- When was your last meal? *Three hours ago.* _____
- When was the last time you were sick? _____
- When was the last time you went to the movies? _____
- When was the last time you were in a car? _____
- When was the last time you took a vacation? _____

18.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses () + *for* or *ago*.

- Rachel arrived in Brazil *three days ago* _____. (three days)
- Rachel has been in Brazil *for three days* _____. (three days)
- Linda and Frank have been married _____. (20 years)
- Linda and Frank got married _____. (20 years)
- We arrived _____. (ten minutes)
- It started to rain _____. (an hour)
- Silvia has been studying English _____. (six months)
- I bought these shoes _____. (a few days)

18.4 Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

- Pam is in Cuba now. She arrived three days ago. *She has been there for three days.*
- Carlos is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has _____.
- It's raining. It started an hour ago. It's been _____.
- I know Sue. I met her two years ago. I've _____.
- I have a camera. I bought it in 1999. I've _____.
- Liz is studying medicine at the university. She started three years ago. She has _____.
- Toshi plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old. Toshi has _____.

18.5 Write sentences about yourself with *for* and *since*. Begin with the words in parentheses ().

- (I've lived) _____
- (I've been) _____
- (I've been studying) _____
- (I've known) _____
- (I've had) _____

A



His car is dirty.



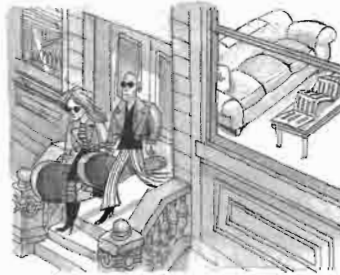
He is washing his car.



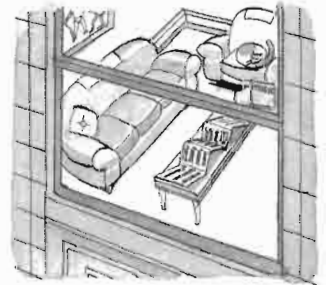
He has washed his car.
(= his car is clean *now*)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They have gone out.
(= they are not at home *now*)

B

We use the *present perfect* (he has washed / they have gone, etc.) for an action in the past with a result *now*.

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
- "Where's Tiffany?" "She's gone to bed." (= she is in bed *now*)
- We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
- Rachel has a headache because she hasn't taken her medicine.
- "Bob is on vacation." "Oh, where has he gone?"
- Have you met my brother, or should I introduce you?
- I was a very slow typist in college, but I've gotten faster.

Usually you can also use the *simple past* (he washed / I lost, etc.) in these situations. So you can say:

- "Where's your key?" "I've lost it." or "I lost it."
- "Is Peter here?" "No, he's gone home." or "He went home."
- We've bought a new car. or We bought a new car.


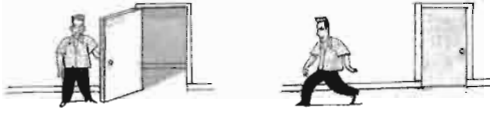


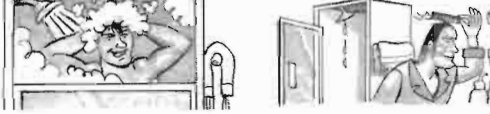

C

We use only the simple past (not the present perfect) with a *finished* time (yesterday, last week, etc.).

- I lost my key yesterday. (*not* I have lost)
- We bought a new car last week. (*not* we have bought)

Exercises

19.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Use the present perfect. Choose from:
close the door fall down go to bed stop raining take a shower wash her car

1. *before* → *now*

She has washed her car.
2. *before* → *now*

 He _____.
3. *before* → *now*

 They _____.
4. *before* → *now*

 It _____.
5. *before* → *now*

 He _____.
6. *before* → *now*

 The _____.

19.2 Rewrite the sentences that have underlined verbs. Use the present perfect.

1. Lee Ming isn't here. He went home. *He has gone home.*
2. I don't need to call them. I wrote them a letter. _____
3. Karen's not coming to the party. She broke her arm. _____
4. My brother and his wife don't live here anymore. They moved to Seattle.

5. I made a big mistake. _____
6. I lost my wallet. _____
 Did you see it anywhere? _____
7. Did you hear? _____
 Mark got married! _____

Now rewrite these present perfect sentences in the simple past.

8. I've done the shopping. *I did the shopping.*
9. Brian has taken my bike again without asking. _____
10. Have you told your friends the good news? _____
11. We haven't paid the electric bill. _____

A

just (= a short time ago)

We use **just** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
B: Yes, they've **just arrived**. or Yes, they **just arrived**.
- A: Are you hungry?
B: No, I've **just had dinner**. or I **just had dinner**.
- A: Is Jiro here?
B: Sorry, he's **just left**. or Sorry, he **just left**.



They have **just arrived**.

B

already (= before you expected / before I expected)

We use **already** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
B: They've **already arrived**. or They **already arrived**.
- It's only nine o'clock, and Anne **has already gone** to bed.
or ... Anne **already went** to bed.
- A: John, this is Mary.
B: Yes, I know. We've **already met**. or We **already met**.



C

yet (= until now)

We use **yet** with the *present perfect* or *simple past*. We use **yet** in negative sentences (I **haven't** ... **yet**) and questions (Have you ... **yet**?). **Yet** is usually at the end.

yet in *negative sentences*

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
B: No, they **haven't arrived yet**. or ... they **didn't arrive yet**.
(but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does John know that you're going away?
B: No, I **haven't told him yet**. or ... I **didn't tell him yet**.
(but B is going to tell him soon)
- Joy bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn it yet**. or ... she **didn't wear it yet**.

yet in *questions*

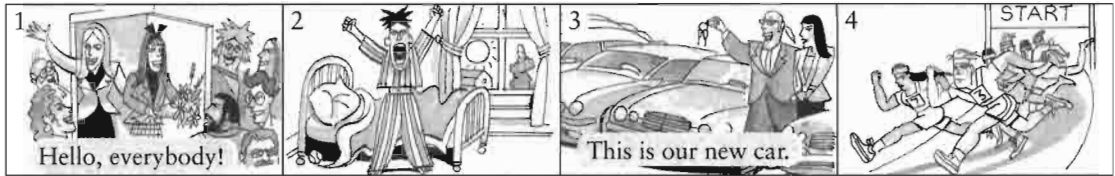
- A: Have Diane and Paul **arrived yet**? or
Did Diane and Paul **arrive yet**?
B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- A: Has Nicole **started her new job yet**? or
Did Nicole **start her new job yet**?
B: No, she's starting next week.
- A: This is my new dress.
B: Oh, it's nice. Have you **worn it yet**? or
Did you **wear it yet**?

This is my new dress.



Oh, it's nice. Have you worn it yet?

20.1 Write a sentence for each picture. Use *just* and the present perfect.



1. *They've just arrived* _____ .
 2. He _____ .
 3. They _____ .
 4. The race _____ .

20.2 Complete the sentences. Use *already* and the present perfect.

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. | What time is Yong Jin arriving? | <i>He's already arrived.</i> |
| 2. | Do Sue and Bill want to see the movie? | No, they _____ it. |
| 3. | Don't forget to call Eric. | I _____ . |
| 4. | When is Mark going to work? | He _____ . |
| 5. | Do you want to read the newspaper? | I _____ . |
| 6. | When does Nicole start her new job? | She _____ . |

20.3 Rewrite these sentences. Use the present perfect.

- Did Nicole start her new job yet? *Has Nicole started her new job yet?*
- Did you tell your father about the accident yet? _____
- I just ate a big dinner, so I'm not hungry. _____
- Jenny can watch TV because she already did her homework. _____
- You can't go to bed – you didn't brush your teeth yet. _____
- You can't talk to Pete because he just went home. _____
- Sarah just got out of the hospital, so she can't go to work. _____

Now rewrite these sentences in the simple past.

- Have you given the mailman our new address yet?
Did you give the mailman our new address yet?
- The mailman hasn't come yet. _____
- I've just spoken to your sister. _____
- Has Mario bought a new computer yet? _____
- Ted and Alice haven't told anyone they're getting married yet. _____
- We've already done our packing for our trip. _____
- I've just been to the gym. I feel great! _____

20.4 Write questions with the present perfect and *yet*.

- Your friend has gotten a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her,
Have you started your new job yet? _____ ?
- Your friend has some new neighbors. Maybe he has met them. You ask him,
_____ you _____ ?
- Your friend has to write a letter. Perhaps she has written it now. You ask her,
_____ ?
- Jiro was trying to sell his car. Maybe he has sold it now. You ask a friend about Jiro.
_____ ?

I've lost my key. I lost my key last week. (Present Perfect and Simple Past 3)

A

Sometimes you can use the *present perfect* (I have lost / he has gone, etc.) or the *simple past* (I lost / he went, etc.).

- "Is Peter here?" "No, he's gone home." or "No, he went home."

But with a finished time (yesterday / last week, etc.), we use only the simple past (not the present perfect).

Simple past + finished time



Do not use the present perfect with a finished time.

- I saw Ratana yesterday. (*not* I have seen)
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (*not* Where have you been)
- We didn't take a vacation last year. (*not* We haven't taken)
- "What did you do last night?" "I stayed at home."
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the simple past to ask **When . . . ?** or **What time . . . ?**.

- **When did they arrive?** (*not* When have they arrived?)

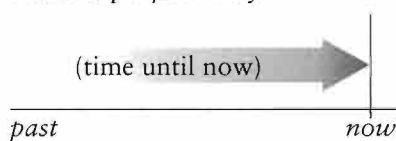
B

Compare:

Present perfect or simple past

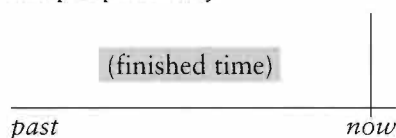
- I **have lost** my key. or I **lost** my key. (= I can't find it *now*)
- Bill **has gone** home. or Bill **went** home. (= he isn't here *now*)
- **Have you had** lunch? or **Did you have** lunch?
- The letter **hasn't arrived** yet. or The letter **didn't arrive** yet.

Present perfect only



- **Have you ever been** to Spain? (= in your life, until *now*)
- My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.
- We've **lived** in Boston for six years. (= we live there *now*)

Simple past only



- **Did you go** to Spain last year?
- Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.
- We **lived** in Chicago for ten years, but now we live in Boston.

21.1 Use the words in parentheses () to answer the questions.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. (an hour ago) | Have you had lunch? |
| 2. (last week) | Have you started your new job? |
| 3. (on Friday) | Have your friends arrived? |
| 4. (at 5 o'clock) | Has Sarah gone out? |
| 5. (yesterday) | Have you worn your new suit? |

Yes, I <u>had it an hour ago</u> .
Yes, I _____ last week.
Yes, they _____.
Yes, _____.
Yes, _____.

21.2 Right or wrong? Correct the underlined parts that are wrong.

- I've lost my key. I can't find it. RIGHT
- Have you seen Anne yesterday? WRONG Did you see _____
- I've finished my work at two o'clock. _____
- I'm ready now. I've finished my work. _____
- What time have you finished your work? _____
- Gloria isn't here. She's gone out. _____
- Jim's grandmother has died last night. _____
- Where have you been in 1998? _____

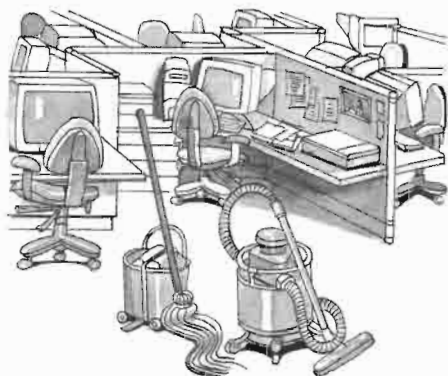
21.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or simple past.

- My friend is a writer. He has written _____ many books. (write)
- We didn't take _____ a vacation last year. (not / take)
- I _____ tennis yesterday afternoon. (play)
- What time _____ to bed last night? (you / go)
- Kathy travels a lot. She _____ many countries. (visit)
- I live in New York now, but I _____ in Mexico for many years. (live)
- The weather _____ very good yesterday. (not / be)
- Sonia is an actress now. She _____ in several plays. (be)
- I _____ my hair before breakfast this morning. (wash)

21.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or simple past.

1. A: <u>Have you ever been</u> (you / ever / be) to Florida? B: Yes, we <u>went</u> (go) there on vacation two years ago. A: _____ (you / have) a good time? B: Yes, it _____ (be) great.	2. A: What does your friend do? B: She's a painter. She _____ (win) many prizes for her paintings. A: _____ (you / see) any of her paintings? B: Yes, _____ (I / see) some of her work last week.
3. Rose works in a factory now, but she _____ (have) a lot of different jobs. Five years ago, she _____ (be) a waitress in a restaurant. After that, she _____ (work) on a ranch, but she _____ (not / enjoy) it very much.	4. A: Do you know Mark's sister? B: I _____ (see) her a few times but I _____ (never / speak) to her. _____ (you / ever / speak) to her? A: Yes, I _____ (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.

A



The office **is cleaned** every day.

The office **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare *active* and *passive*:

Somebody **cleans** **the office** every day. (*active*)

The office **is cleaned** every day. (*passive*)

Somebody **cleaned** **the office** yesterday. (*active*)

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. (*passive*)

B

The passive is:

Past participle

Simple present

am/is/are

(not)

cleaned

done

Simple past

was/were

invented

built

injured

taken, etc.

The *past participle* of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged, etc.).

For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken, etc.), see Appendixes 2–3.

- Butter **is made** from cream.
- Oranges **are imported** into Canada.
- How often **are** these rooms cleaned?
- I **am** never invited to parties.
- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone invented?
- We **weren't** invited to the party last week.
- "Was anybody injured in the accident?" "Yes, two people **were taken** to the hospital."

C

was/were born

- I **was born** in Los Angeles in 1981. (*not* I am born)
- Where **were** you born?

D

Passive + by . . .

- We **were woken up** by a loud noise. (= The noise woke us up.)
- The telephone **was invented** by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
- My brother **was bitten** by a dog last week.

Is being done / has been done Unit 23 **Irregular Verbs** Unit 25, Appendixes 2–3

By Unit 106 **Active and Passive** Appendix 1

22.1 Write sentences with the words in parentheses (). Sentences 1–7 are present.

- (the office / clean / every day) *The office is cleaned every day.*
- (these rooms / clean / every day?) *Are these rooms cleaned every day?*
- (glass / make / from sand) Glass _____.
- (stamps / sell / in a post office) _____.
- (this word / not / use / very often) _____.
- (we / allow / to park here?) _____.
- (how / this word / pronounce?) _____.

Sentences 8–14 are past.

- (the office / clean / yesterday) *The office was cleaned yesterday.*
- (the house / paint / last month) The house _____.
- (three people / injure / in the accident) _____.
- (my bicycle / steal / a few days ago) _____.
- (when / this bridge / build?) _____.
- (you / invite / to the party last week?) _____.
- (I / not / wake up / by the noise) _____.

22.2 Correct these sentences.

- This house built 100 years ago. *This house was built 100 years ago.*
- Soccer plays in most countries of the world. _____.
- Why did the letter send to the wrong address? _____.
- A garage is a place where cars repair. _____.
- Where are you born? _____.
- How many languages are speaking in Canada? _____.
- Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. _____.
- When was invented the bicycle? _____.

22.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ damage find give invite make make show steal take

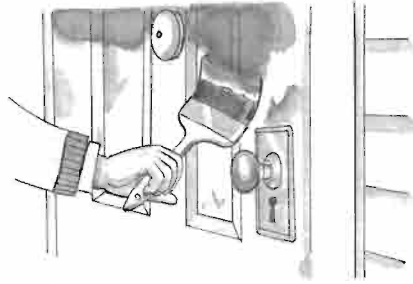
- The room *is cleaned* _____ every day.
- I saw an accident yesterday. Two people *were taken* _____ to the hospital.
- Paper _____ from wood.
- There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms _____.
- “Where did you get this picture?” “It _____ to me by a friend of mine.”
- Many British programs _____ on American television.
- “Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?” “No. They _____, but they didn’t go.”
- “How old is this movie?” “It _____ in 1965.”
- My car _____ last week, but the next day it _____ by the police.

22.4 Where were they born?

- (Makoto / Kyoto) *Makoto was born in Kyoto.*
- (Isabel / São Paulo) Isabel _____.
- (her parents / Rio de Janeiro) Her _____.
- (you / ???) I _____.
- (your mother / ???) _____.

A

is/are being . . . (*present continuous passive*)



Somebody is painting the door. (*active*)
 The door is being painted. (*passive*)

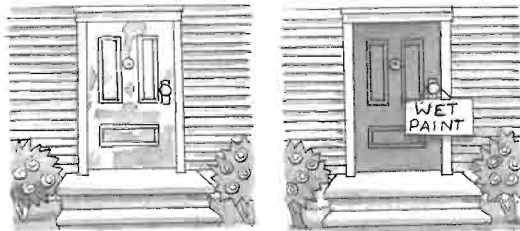
- I took the bus this morning. My car is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses are being built across from the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the *present continuous* and *simple present*:

- The office is being cleaned right now. (*present continuous*)
 The office is cleaned every day. (*simple present*)
- In the U.S., football games are usually shown on TV on Mondays, but no games are being shown next Monday.

B

has/have been . . . (*present perfect passive*)



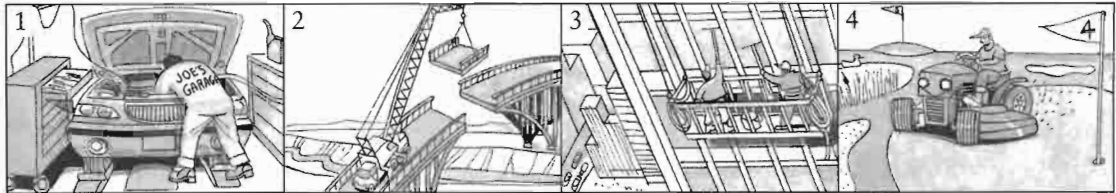
Somebody has painted the door. (*active*)
 The door has been painted. (*passive*)

- My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
- Has this window been washed? (= Has somebody washed it?)

Compare the *present perfect* and *simple past*:

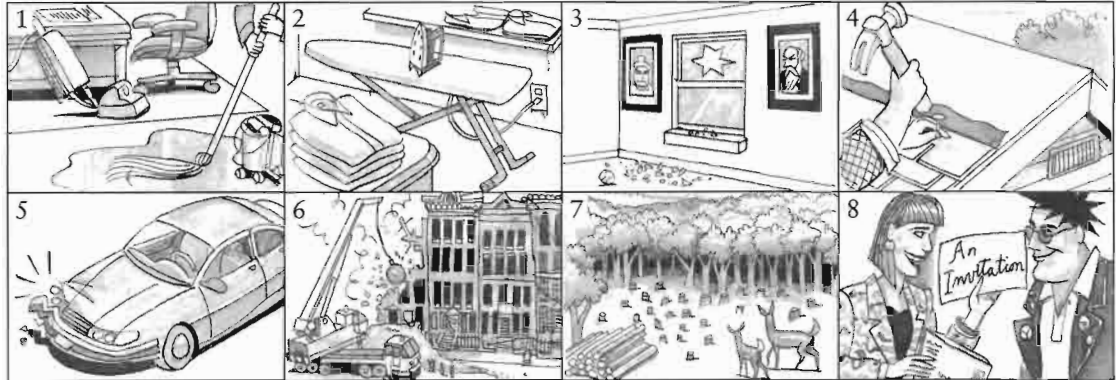
- The room is clean now. It has been cleaned. (*present perfect*)
 The room was cleaned yesterday. (*simple past*)
- I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (*present perfect*)
 My keys were stolen last week. (*simple past*)

23.1 What's happening?



1. The car is being repaired. 3. The windows _____ .
 2. A bridge _____ . 4. The grass _____ .

23.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).



1. (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
 2. (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
 3. (the window / break) The window _____ .
 4. (the roof / repair) The roof _____ .
 5. (the car / damage) _____ .
 6. (the buildings / knock / down) _____ .
 7. (the trees / cut / down) _____ .
 8. (they / invite / to a party) _____ .

23.3 Use the words in parentheses () to complete the sentences. (Study Unit 22 first.)

- I can't use my office right now. It is being painted . (paint)
- We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited . (not / invite)
- The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now.
It _____ . (repair)
- The washing machine _____ yesterday afternoon. (repair)
- A factory is a place where things _____ . (make)
- How old are these houses? When _____ ? (they / build)
- A: _____ right now? (the computer / use)
B: Yes, Jim is using it.
- I've never seen these flowers before. What _____ ? (they / call)
- My sunglasses _____ at the beach yesterday. (steal)
- The bridge is closed. It _____ last week and it _____ yet. (damage) (not / repair)

A

be (am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working, etc.)

am/is/are + -ing
(present continuous)
See Units 3–4 and 26.

- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- It **isn't** raining right now.
- What **are** you **doing** tonight?

was/were + -ing
(past continuous)
See Unit 13.

- I **was working** when she arrived.
- It **wasn't** raining, so we went out.
- What **were** you **doing** at three o'clock?

B

be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten, etc.)

am/is/are + past participle
(simple present passive)
See Unit 22.

- The room **is cleaned** every day.
- I'm **never invited** to parties.
- Oranges **are imported** into Canada.

was/were + past participle
(simple past passive)
See Unit 22.

- The room **was cleaned** yesterday.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- How **was** the window **broken**?
- Where **were** you **born**?

C

have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been, etc.)

have/has + past participle
(present perfect)
See Units 16–17, 19–21.

- I've **lived** in this house for ten years.
- Tom **has never ridden** a horse.
- Barbara **hasn't been** to South America.
- Where **have** Paul and Nicole **gone**?

D

do/does/did + base form (clean/like/eat/go, etc.)

do/does + base form
(simple present negative
and questions)
See Units 6–7.

- I **like** coffee, but I **don't like** tea.
- Chris **doesn't go** out very often.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?
- Does Barbara **live** alone?

did + base form
(simple past negative
and questions)
See Unit 12.

- I **didn't watch** TV yesterday.
- It **didn't rain** last week.
- What time **did** Paul and Nicole **go** out?

24.1 Write *is/are/do/does*.

1. *Do* _____ you work on weekends?
2. Where *are* _____ they going?
3. Why _____ you looking at me?
4. _____ Bill live near you?
5. _____ you like to cook?
6. _____ the sun shining?
7. What time _____ the stores close?
8. _____ Ratana working today?
9. What _____ this word mean?
10. _____ you feeling all right?

24.2 Write *am not / isn't / aren't / don't / doesn't*. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom *doesn't* _____ work on weekends.
2. I'm very tired. I _____ want to go out tonight.
3. I'm very tired. I _____ going out tonight.
4. Eric _____ working this week. He's on vacation.
5. My parents are usually at home. They _____ go out very often.
6. Barbara has traveled a lot, but she _____ speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the television. I _____ watching it.
8. There's a party next week, but we _____ going.

24.3 Write *was/were/did/have/has*.

1. Where *were* _____ your shoes made?
2. _____ you go out last night?
3. What _____ you doing at 10:30?
4. Where _____ your mother born?
5. _____ Barbara gone home?
6. What time _____ she go?
7. When _____ these houses built?
8. _____ Sanun arrived yet?
9. Why _____ you go home early?
10. How long _____ they been married?

24.4 Write *is/are/was/were/have/has*.

1. Joe *has* _____ never ridden a horse.
2. This bridge _____ built ten years ago.
3. _____ you finished your work yet?
4. This town is always clean. The streets _____ cleaned every day.
5. Where _____ you born?
6. I _____ just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7. Glass _____ made from sand.
8. This is a very old photograph. It _____ taken a long time ago.
9. Joe _____ bought a new car.

24.5 Complete the sentences. Choose verbs from the list. Use the correct forms.

damage	enjoy	go away	open	rain	use
eat	go	listen	pronounce	understand	

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's *raining* _____.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you *go* _____ to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you _____ them all?
4. How is your new job? Are you _____ it?
5. My car was badly _____ in the accident, but I was OK.
6. Chris has a car but she doesn't _____ it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has _____ for a few days.
8. I don't _____ the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Mark is in his room. He's _____ to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it _____?
11. How do you _____ this window? Can you show me?

A

Regular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**.

clean → cleaned live → lived paint → painted study → studied

Simple past (see Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Charlie **studied** engineering in college.

Past participle

Present perfect = **have/has** + *past participle* (see Units 16–17, 19–21)

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tracy **has lived** in Miami for ten years.

Passive = **be (is / are / were / has been, etc.)** + *past participle* (see Units 22–23)

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **has been repaired**.

B

Irregular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of irregular verbs are not **-ed**. For example:

<i>Base form</i>	make	break	cut
<i>Simple past</i>	made	broke	cut
<i>Past participle</i>	made	broken	cut

Sometimes the *simple past* and *past participle* are the same. For example:

<i>Base form</i>	make	find	buy	cut
<i>Simple past</i>	made	found	bought	cut
<i>Past participle</i>				

- I **made** a cake yesterday. (simple past)
- I've just **made** some coffee. (past participle in the present perfect)
- Butter **is made** from cream. (past participle in the passive)

Sometimes the *simple past* and *past participle* are different. For example:

<i>Base form</i>	break	know	begin	go
<i>Simple past</i>	broke	knew	begin	went
<i>Past participle</i>	broken	known	began	gone

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. (simple past)
- Somebody **has broken** this window. (past participle in the present perfect)
- This window **was broken** last night. (past participle in the passive)

25.1 Write the simple past / past participle of these verbs. (The simple past and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. make <i>made</i> | 6. enjoy _____ | 11. hear _____ |
| 2. cut <i>cut</i> | 7. buy _____ | 12. put _____ |
| 3. say _____ | 8. sit _____ | 13. catch _____ |
| 4. bring _____ | 9. leave _____ | 14. watch _____ |
| 5. pay _____ | 10. happen _____ | 15. understand _____ |

25.2 Write the simple past and past participle of these verbs.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. break <i>broke broken</i> | 6. run _____ | 11. take _____ |
| 2. begin _____ | 7. speak _____ | 12. go _____ |
| 3. eat _____ | 8. write _____ | 13. give _____ |
| 4. drink _____ | 9. come _____ | 14. throw _____ |
| 5. drive _____ | 10. know _____ | 15. get _____ |

25.3 Put the verb in the right form.

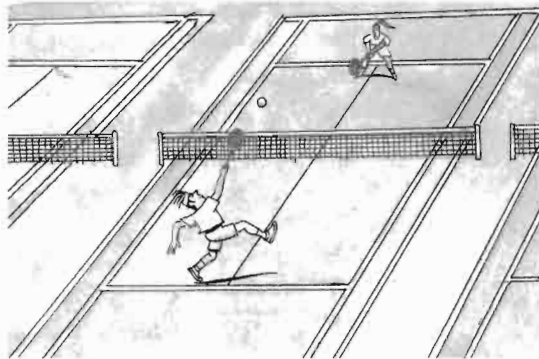
- I *washed* my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
- Somebody has *broken* this window. (break)
- I feel good. I _____ very well last night. (sleep)
- We _____ a really good movie yesterday. (see)
- It _____ a lot while we were on vacation. (rain)
- I've _____ my bag. (lose) Have you _____ it? (see)
- Rosa's bicycle was _____ last week. (steal)
- I _____ to bed early because I was tired. (go)
- Have you _____ your work yet? (finish)
- The shopping mall was _____ about 20 years ago. (build)
- Annie _____ to drive when she was 16. (learn)
- I've never _____ a horse. (ride)
- Julia is a good friend of mine. I've _____ her for a long time. (know)
- Yesterday I _____ and _____ my leg. (fall / hurt)

25.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb in the correct form.

cost drive fly ~~make~~ meet sell speak swim tell think wake up

- I've just *made* some coffee. Would you like some?
- Have you _____ John about your new job?
- I know Aldo, but I've never _____ his wife.
- We were _____ by loud music in the middle of the night.
- Stephanie jumped into the river and _____ to the other side.
- "Did you like the movie?" "Yes, I _____ it was very good."
- Many different languages are _____ in Guatemala.
- Our vacation _____ a lot of money because we stayed at an expensive hotel.
- Have you ever _____ a very fast car?
- All the tickets for the concert were _____ very quickly.
- A bird _____ in through the open window while we were eating dinner.

A



They are playing tennis (now).



He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use **am/is/are + -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now.

- "Where are Sue and Amanda?" "They're **playing** tennis in the park."
- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.).

- Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- I'm **not working** next week.

B

I **am doing** something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it

- Blanca **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
(= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We're **having** a party next weekend.
- Are you **meeting** Bill at the movies tonight?
- What **are you doing** tomorrow night?
- I'm **not going** out tonight. I'm **staying** at home.



I'm going to a concert tomorrow.

You can also say, "I'm going to do something." (see Unit 27)

C

Do not use the *simple present* (I stay / Do you go . . . ?, etc.) for plans and arrangements.

- I'm **staying** at home tonight. (*not* I stay)
- Are you **going** out tonight? (*not* Do you go)
- Anne **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* Anne doesn't come)

But use the simple present for schedules (buses, movies, classes, etc.).

- The plane **arrives** in New York at 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- What time **does** the movie **end** tonight?

Compare:

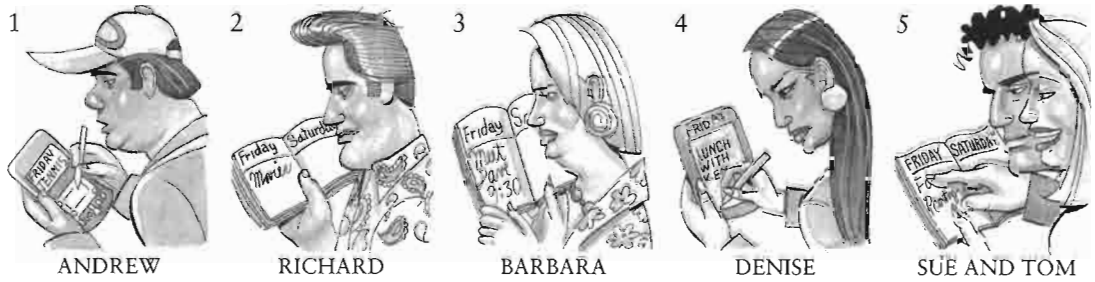
Present continuous (usually for people)

- I'm **going** to a concert tomorrow.
- What time **are you leaving**?

Simple present (for schedules)

- The concert **starts** at 7:30.
- What time **does** your plane **leave**?

26.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



1. *Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.* 4. _____ lunch with Ken.
 2. Richard _____ to the movies. 5. _____
 3. Barbara _____.

26.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

- (you / go / out / tonight?) *Are you going out tonight?* _____
- (you / work / next week?) _____
- (what / you / do / tomorrow night?) _____
- (what time / your friends / come?) _____
- (when / Liz / go / on vacation?) _____

26.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

- I'm staying at home tonight.* _____
- I'm going to the theater on Monday.* _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

26.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (*he is leaving*, etc.) or simple present (*the train leaves*, etc.).

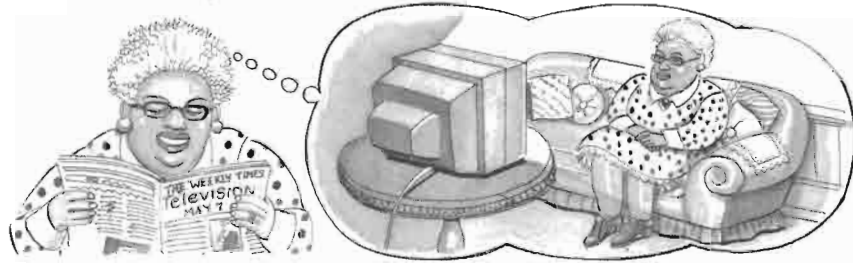
- "*Are you going* _____ out tonight?" (you / go) "No, I'm too tired."
- We're going* _____ to a concert tonight. (we / go) *It starts* _____ at 7:30. (it / start)
- Listen to this! _____ married next month! (Karen / get)
- A: My parents _____ on vacation soon. (go)
 B: Oh, that's nice. Where _____? (they / go)
- Silvia is taking an English course this semester. The course _____ on Friday. (end)
- There's a football game tomorrow, but _____. (I / not / go)
- _____ out with some friends tonight. (I / go) Why don't you come too? _____ at John's house at 8 o'clock. (we / meet)
- A: How _____ home after the party tomorrow? (you / get) By taxi?
 B: No, I can take the bus. The last bus _____ at midnight. (leave)
- A: Do you want to go to the movies tonight?
 B: Yes, what time _____? (the movie / begin)
- A: What _____ next Monday afternoon? (you / do)
 B: _____ (I / work)

A

I'm going to do something.

Morning

I'm going to watch TV tonight.



Tonight

She is going to watch TV tonight.

We use *am/is/are + going to . . .* for the *future*.

I am	do	am I	buy . . . ?
he/she/it is	drink	is he/she/it	eat . . . ?
we/you/they are	watch	are we/you/they	wear . . . ?
(not) going to		going to	

B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it

I decided to do it

I'm going to do it

past now future

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- "Your hands are dirty." "Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them."
- Are you going to invite Min Fang to your party?

We also use the *present continuous (I am doing)* for the future, usually for arrangements (see Unit 26).

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C

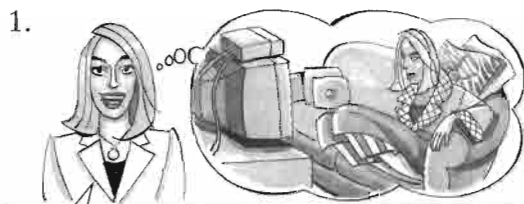
Something is going to happen = it is clear now that it is sure to happen

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
(black clouds now → rain)
- It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
I'm going to be late.
(9 o'clock now and not ready → late)

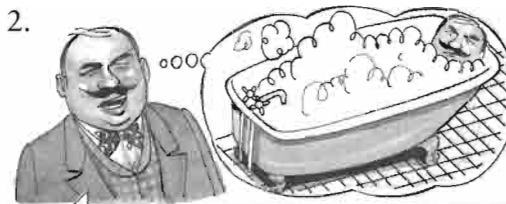
It's going to rain.



27.1 What are these people saying?



I 'm going to watch TV _____.



I _____.



We _____.



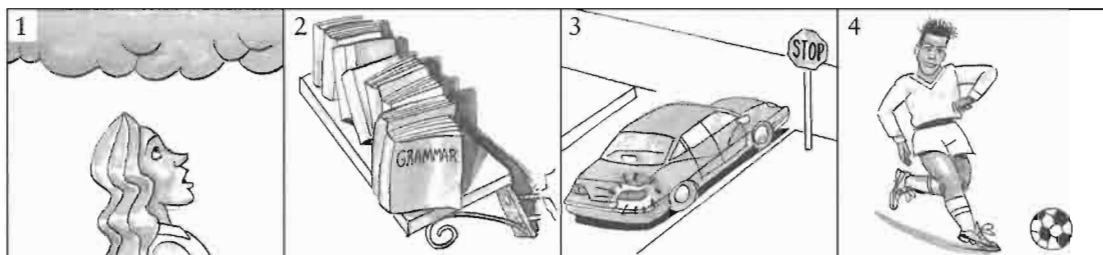
I _____.

27.2 Complete the sentences. Use am/is/are + going to + one of these verbs:

do eat give lie down visit walk wash watch wear

- My hands are dirty. I 'm going to wash _____ them.
- What are you going to wear _____ to the party tonight?
- It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I _____.
- John is going to Seattle next week. He _____ some friends.
- I'm hungry. I _____ a sandwich.
- It's Sharon's birthday next week. We _____ her a present.
- Maria says she's feeling very tired. She _____ for an hour.
- There's a good program on Channel 13 at 9:00 tonight. _____ you _____ it?
- What _____ Rachel _____ when she finishes school?

27.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



- It's going to rain.
- The shelf _____.
- The car _____ right.
- He _____ the ball.

27.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

- I'm _____.
- _____.
- _____.

A



SOO MI

Soo Mi goes to work every day. She is always there from 8:30 until 4:30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Soo Mi is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

will + base form (will be / will win / will come, etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will ('ll) will not (won't)	be win eat come, etc.	will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? eat? come?, etc.
----------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------	------	----------------------------	------------------------------------

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll, etc.

won't = will not: I won't (I will not) / you won't / she won't, etc.

B

We use will for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.).

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Los Angeles. Tomorrow she'll be in Mexico City. Next week she'll be in New York.
- You can call me tonight. I'll be home.
- Put this bread in the back yard. The birds will eat it.
- We'll probably go out tonight.
- Will you be home tonight?
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say I think . . . will

- I think Diana will pass her driver's test.
- Do you think the test will be difficult?
- I don't think it will rain this afternoon.

We say I don't think . . . will . . . (not I think . . . won't . . .).

- I don't think the test will be difficult. (not I think the test won't be . . .)

C

We do not use will for things we have already *arranged* or *decided* to do (see Units 26–27).

- We're going to the movies on Saturday. (not We will go)
- I'm not working tomorrow. (not I won't work)
- Are you going to cook dinner tonight? (not Will you cook)

28.1 Tracy is traveling in South America. Complete the sentences with *she was*, *she's*, or *she'll be*.

1. Yesterday she was in Rio de Janeiro.
2. Tomorrow _____ in Bogota.
3. Last week _____ in Santiago.
4. Next week _____ in Caracas.
5. Right now _____ in Lima.
6. Three days ago _____ in Buenos Aires.
7. At the end of her trip _____ very tired.



28.2 Where will you be? Write answers about yourself. Use one of these:

I'll be . . . I'll probably be . . . I don't know where I'll be.

1. At 10 o'clock tomorrow? I'll be at work. OR I'll probably be at the beach.
2. One hour from now? _____
3. At midnight tonight? _____
4. At 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon? _____
5. Two years from now? _____

28.3 Write *will ('ll)* or *won't*.

1. Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.
2. "Are you ready yet?" "Not yet. I _____ be ready in five minutes."
3. I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I _____ be at home tomorrow.
4. It _____ rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5. A: I don't feel very well tonight.
B: Well, go to bed early and you _____ feel better in the morning.
6. It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He _____ be 25.
7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It _____ happen again.

28.4 Rewrite these sentences. Use *I think . . .* or *I don't think . . .*

1. (Diana will pass the driver's test.) I think Diana will pass the driver's test.
2. (Diana won't pass the driver's test.) I don't think Diana will pass the driver's test.
3. (We'll win the game.) I _____.
4. (I won't be here tomorrow.) _____.
5. (Rika will like her present.) _____.
6. (They won't get married.) _____.
7. (You won't like the movie.) _____.

28.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)

1. We'll go / We're going to the theater tonight. We've got tickets. (*We're going* is right.)
2. "What will you do / are you doing tomorrow night?" "Nothing. I'm free."
3. They'll leave / They're leaving tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8:40.
4. I'm sure she'll lend / she's lending us some money. She's very rich.
5. "Why are you putting on your coat?" "I'll go / I'm going out."
6. Do you think Claire will call / is calling us tonight?
7. Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.

A



You can use **I'll** . . . (**I will**) when you offer or decide to do something.

- "My suitcase is very heavy." "I'll carry it for you."
- "I'll call you tomorrow, OK?" "OK. Goodbye."

We often say **I think I'll** . . . / **I don't think I'll** . . . when we decide to do something.

- I'm tired. **I think I'll** go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll** sit outside.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll** go out.

Do not use the simple present (**I go / I call**, etc.) in sentences like these:

- I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*not I call you*)
- I think I'll go to bed early. (*not I go to bed*)

B

Do not use **I'll** . . . for something you decided before (see Units 26–27).

- I'm **working** tomorrow. (*not I'll work*)
- There's a good program on TV tonight. I'm **going to watch** it. (*not I'll watch*)
- What **are you doing** this weekend? (*not What will you do*)

C

Shall I/we . . . ?



Shall I/we . . . ? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- "Shall I call you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Shall we** go for a walk?

We use **should** in the same way.

- "Should I call you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Should we** go for a walk?

29.1 Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + one of these verbs:

carry do eat send show sit stay

1. My suitcase is very heavy.
2. Enjoy your vacation.
3. I don't want this banana.
4. Do you want a chair?
5. Did you call Jenny?
6. Are you coming with me?
7. How do you use this camera?

I'll carry _____ it for you.
 Thank you. _____ you a postcard.
 Well, I'm hungry. _____ it.
 No, that's OK. _____ on the floor.
 Oh no, I forgot. _____ it now.
 No, I don't think so. _____ here.
 Give it to me and _____ you.

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + one of these verbs:

buy go have play

1. It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* _____ out.
2. I'm hungry. I _____ something to eat.
3. I feel tired. _____ tennis.
4. This camera is too expensive. _____ it.

29.3 Which is right?

1. I call / I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*I'll call* is right.)
2. I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3. I like sports. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sports on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5. Jim is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. "This letter is for Alicia." "OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her."
7. A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
 B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
8. "Can you tell Ted I'll be late tonight?" "Sure, I tell / I'm going to tell / I'll tell him."
9. "Why are you going out?" "I do / I'll do / I'm going to do the shopping."
10. I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.
11. I like this hat. I think I buy / I'll buy it.

29.4 What does B say to A? Find the right answers.

A

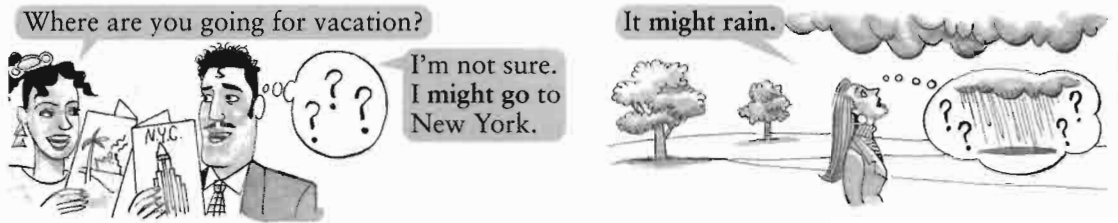
1. It's very warm in this room.
2. This TV program is boring.
3. Should we have a party?
4. It's dark in this room.
5. Should I go to the store?
6. Shall we go out?
7. Shall I wait here?
8. Have we got any bread?
9. Should we get some lottery tickets?

B

d

- a) If you want. Where should we go?
- b) Yes, who shall we invite?
- c) No, shall I go and get some?
- d) Shall I open the window?
- e) Should I turn on the light?
- f) OK, how many shall we buy?
- g) Should I turn it off?
- h) No, come with me.
- i) No, it's OK. I'll go.

A



He **might** go to New York.
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

It **might** rain.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + base form (might go / might be / might rain, etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	might (not)	be go play come, etc.
----------------------------	--------------------	--------------------------------

B

- I might** = it is possible that I will
- I **might** go to the movies tonight. (= it is possible that I will go)
 - A: When is Kanya going to call you?
B: I don't know. She **might** call this afternoon.
 - Take an umbrella with you. It **might** rain.
 - Buy a lottery ticket. You **might** be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
 - "Are you going out tonight?" "I **might**." (= I might go out)
- Study the difference:
- I'm **playing** tennis tomorrow. (*sure*)
 - I **might** play tennis tomorrow. (*possible*)
 - Kanya **is going to** call later. (*sure*)
 - Kanya **might** call later. (*possible*)

C

- The negative is **might not**.
- I **might not** go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
 - Sonia **might not** come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

D

- may**
- You can use **may** in the same way. I **may** = I **might**.
- I **may** go to the movies tonight. (= I might go)
 - Sonia **may not** come to the party. (= Sonia might not come)
- May I . . . ?** = Is it OK to . . . ? / Can I . . . ?
- **May** I ask a question? (= Can I ask?)
 - "May I sit here?" "Sure."

30.1 Write sentences with *might*.

1. (it's possible that I'll go to the movies) *I might go to the movies.*
2. (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I _____.
3. (it's possible that Sarah will forget to call) _____.
4. (it's possible that it will snow today) _____.
5. (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) _____.

Write sentences with *might not*.


6. (it's possible that Mark won't be here) _____.
7. (it's possible that I won't have time to go out tonight) _____.

30.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with *I might*.

Europe fish Monday new car take a trip take a taxi

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where are you going for vacation? 2. What are you doing this weekend? 3. When will you see Amy again? 4. What are you going to have for dinner? 5. How are you going to get home tonight? 6. I hear you won some money. What are you going to buy? | <p>I'm not sure. <i>I might go to Europe.</i></p> <p>I don't know. I _____.</p> <p>I'm not sure. _____.</p> <p>I don't know. _____.</p> <p>I'm not sure. _____.</p> <p>I haven't decided yet. _____.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

30.3 You ask Adam about his plans. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 
YOU | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Are you playing tennis tomorrow? 2. Are you going out tonight? 3. Are you going to get up early? 4. Are you working tomorrow? 5. Will you be home tomorrow night? 6. Are you going to watch television? 7. Are you going out this afternoon? 8. Are you going shopping? | <p>Yes, in the afternoon.</p> <p>Possibly.</p> <p>Maybe.</p> <p>No, I'm not.</p> <p>Maybe.</p> <p>I might.</p> <p>Yes, I am.</p> <p>Maybe, I'm not sure.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



ADAM

Now write about Adam. Use *might* where necessary.

1. *He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.*
2. *He might go out tonight.*
3. He _____.
4. _____.
5. _____.
6. _____.
7. _____.
8. _____.

30.4 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

A

I can play the piano.



He can play the piano.

Could you open the door, please?



can + base form (can do / can play / can come, etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	can can't/cannot	do play see come, etc.	can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	do? play? see? come?, etc.
----------------------------	---------------------	---------------------------------	-----	----------------------------	-------------------------------------

B

I can do something = I know how to do it or it is possible for me to do it

- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian, but she can't speak Spanish.
- "Can you swim?" "Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer."
- "Can you change a ten-dollar bill?" "I'm sorry, I can't."
- I'm having a party next week, but Scott and Angela can't come.

C

For the past (yesterday / last week, etc.), we use could/couldn't.

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Shu Ling came to Canada, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night, but I couldn't sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Scott and Angela couldn't come.

D

Can you ...? Could you ...? Can I ...? Could I ...?

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things.

- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you tell me the time, please? or Could you tell ...?

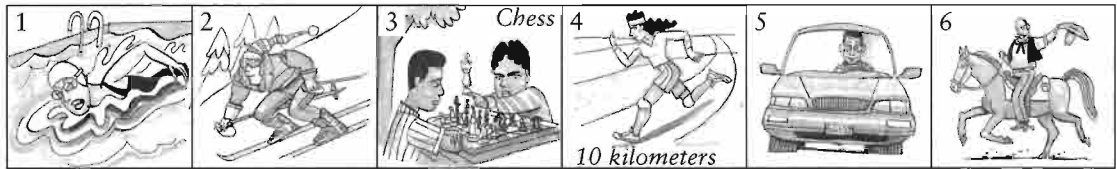
We use Can I have ...? or Could I have ...? to ask for something.

- (in a store) Can I have change for a dollar, please? or Could I have ...?

Can I ...? or Could I ...? = is it OK to do something?

- Tom, can I borrow your pen? or Tom, could I borrow your pen?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Jerry, please? or ... could I speak ...?

31.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:



1. *Can you swim?* _____ 4. _____
 2. _____ 5. _____
 3. _____ 6. _____



Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use *I can* or *I can't*.

7. I _____ . 10. _____
 8. _____ 11. _____
 9. _____ 12. _____

31.2 Complete these sentences. Use *can* or *can't* + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ find hear see speak

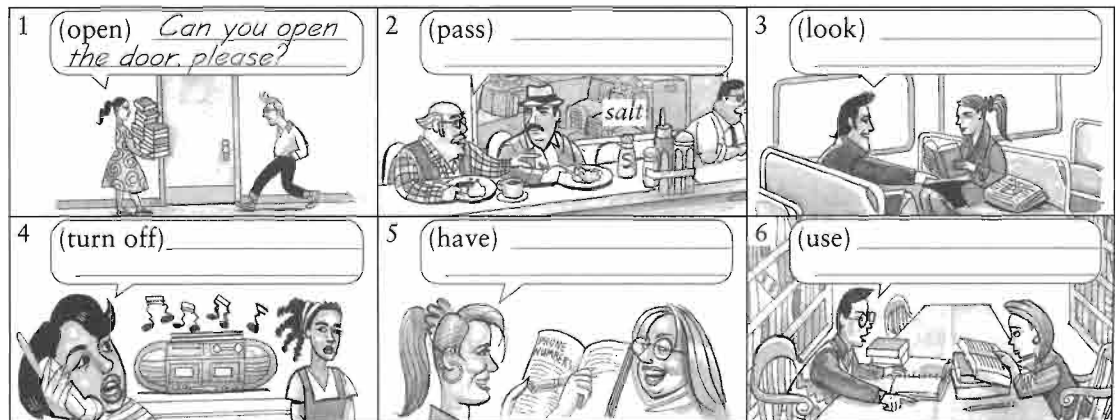
- I'm sorry but we *can't come* _____ to your party next Saturday.
- I like this hotel room. You _____ the mountains from the window.
- You are speaking very quietly. I _____ you.
- Have you seen my suitcase? I _____ it.
- Catherine got the job because she _____ five languages.

31.3 Complete these sentences. Use *can't* or *couldn't* + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go sleep

- I was tired, but I *couldn't sleep* _____ .
- I wasn't hungry yesterday. I _____ my dinner.
- Angela doesn't know what to do. She _____ .
- I wanted to speak to Mark yesterday, but I _____ him.
- Jim _____ to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
- Yoko _____ to the meeting last week. She was sick.

31.4 What do you say in these situations? Use *can* or *could*. Use the words in parentheses ().



A

Tracy's not at work today. She **must be** sick.



She **must be** sick = I am sure she is sick, it is clear that she is sick

Must + base form
(must be / must know, etc.)

I/we/you/they
he/she/it

must (not)

be
know
have
live, etc.

We use **must** when we believe that something is true.

- You worked ten hours today. You **must be** tired.
- My brother has worked at your company for years. You **must know** him.
- My friends have the same zip code as you. They **must live** close to you.
- (*on the telephone*) This isn't the Smiths'? I'm sorry. I **must have** the wrong number.

We use **must not** when we believe that something is *not* true.

- The phone rang eight times and Karen didn't answer. She **must not be** at home.
- Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He **must not have** a car.
- The Silvas are always home on Friday. They **must not work** then.

B

Must also has another meaning. You **must do** something = it is necessary to do it

- You **must be** careful with this knife.
It's very sharp.
- Workers **must wear** safety glasses
at this machine.
- In the U.S., you **must be** 18 to vote.

For the *past* (yesterday, last week, etc.), we use **had to** . . . (*not must*).

- They were in a dangerous situation. They **had to be** careful. (*not They must be careful.*)
- We **had to wear** safety glasses when we visited the factory last week. (*not we must wear*)

You **must not do** something = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do

- Bicyclists **must not ride** on the sidewalk.
(= they must ride in the street)
- You **must not be** late for school again!



32.1 Complete the sentences. Use *must be* + one of these:

for you good hungry in the kitchen tired very happy

1. Silvia worked ten hours today. She must be tired.
2. It's evening and you haven't eaten anything all day. You _____.
3. It's the most popular restaurant in town, so the food _____.
4. "I got the job!" "You did? That's great. You _____."
5. The phone's ringing. I know it's not for me. It _____.
6. My keys aren't in the living room, so they _____.

32.2 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + one of these:

drink have know like work

1. My brother has worked at your company for years. You must know him.
2. Marilyn wears something blue every day. She _____ the color blue.
3. The Hills have six children and three dogs. They _____ a big house.
4. Mrs. Lee bought three gallons of milk at the store. Her children _____ a lot of milk.
5. I know Mrs. Romo has a job, but she's always home during the day. She _____ nights.

32.3 Write *must* or *must not*.

1. (on the telephone) This isn't the Smiths'? I'm sorry. I must have the wrong number.
2. Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He must not have a car.
3. Brandon is very thin. He _____ eat very much.
4. I never see my neighbor in the morning. He _____ leave for work very early.
5. I always have to repeat things when I talk to Kelly. She _____ hear very well.
6. Jim wears the same clothes every day. He _____ have many clothes.
7. You have a cold and a fever? Poor thing! You _____ feel awful.

32.4 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + one of these:

be be get know take wear

1. In most of the U.S., you must be _____ at least 16 to get a driver's license.
2. For this job, you _____ both English and Spanish.
3. People in the front seat of a car _____ a seat belt.
4. High school students who want to go to college _____ good grades.
5. This highway is closed. Drivers _____ another road.
6. A tennis player _____ very good to play professionally.

32.5 Write *must*, *mustn't*, or *had to*.

1. We mustn't forget to send Sam a birthday card.
2. We had to wear safety glasses when we visited the factory.
3. I _____ hurry or I'll be late.
4. "Why were you so late?" "I _____ wait half an hour for the bus."
5. Keep these papers in a safe place. You _____ lose them.
6. Bicyclists _____ follow the same traffic rules as drivers.
7. We _____ forget to turn off the lights when we leave.
8. I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I _____ work.

A

You shouldn't watch TV so much.



Should + base form
(should do / should watch, etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	should shouldn't	do stop go watch, etc.
----------------------------	---------------------	---------------------------------

B

You should do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do

- Tom **should go** to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late, and he's always tired.
- It's a good movie. You **should go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should always watch** the ball.

Should I do something? = is it a good thing to do?

- **Should I invite** Karen to dinner?
- **Should we buy** something special for dinner?

C

You shouldn't do something = it is not a good thing to do (shouldn't = should not)

- Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.

D

We often use think with should.

I think . . . should . . .

- I **think Gary should buy** some new clothes. (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. I **think I should go** home now.

I don't think . . . should . . .

- I **don't think you should work** so hard.
(= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- I **don't think we should go** yet. It's too early.

Do you think . . . should . . . ?

- **Do you think I should buy** this coat?
- **What time do you think we should go** home?

Do you think I should buy this coat?



E

Should is different from have to.

- I **should study** tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies.
- I **have to study** tonight. I can't go to the movies.

F

Another way to say should is ought to.

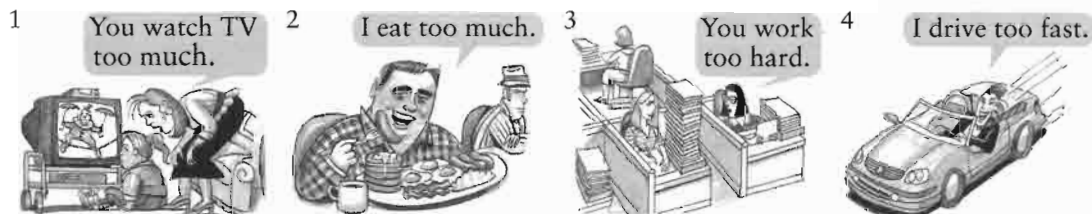
- I **ought to study** tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies. (= I should study)
- I think Gary **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Gary should buy)

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use *you should* + one of these verbs:

brush go read visit ~~watch~~ wear

1. When you play tennis, *you should watch* _____ the ball.
2. It's late and you're very tired. _____ to bed.
3. _____ your teeth twice a day.
4. If you have time, _____ the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you're driving, _____ a seat belt.
6. It's a very good book. _____ it.

33.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use *He/She shouldn't... so...*



1. *She shouldn't watch TV so much* _____
2. He _____
3. _____ hard.
4. _____

33.3 You ask a friend for advice. Write questions with *Do you think I should...* ?

1. You are in a store. You are trying on a jacket. You ask your friend:
(buy) *Do you think I should buy this jacket?* _____
2. You can't drive. You ask your friend:
(learn) Do you think _____ ?
3. You don't like your job. You ask your friend:
(get another job) _____
4. You are going to have a party. You ask your friend:
(invite Scott) _____

33.4 Write sentences with *I think... should* or *I don't think... should*.

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. *I think we should go home now* (go home now)
2. That coat is too big for you. *I don't think you should buy it* _____ (buy it)
3. You don't need your car. _____ (sell it)
4. Diane needs a change. _____ (take a trip)
5. Karen and Don are too young. _____ (get married)
6. You're still sick. _____ (go to work)
7. James isn't feeling well today. _____ (go to the doctor)
8. This hotel is too expensive for us. _____ (stay here)

33.5 What do you think? Write sentences with *should*.

1. I think *everybody should learn another language* _____
2. I think everybody _____
3. I think _____
4. I don't think _____
5. I think I should _____

A



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	have	to do to work
he/she/it	has	to go to wear, etc.

- I'm going to be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Kim starts work at 7 o'clock, so she **has to get up** at 6:00.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driver's license.

B

The *past* (yesterday / last week, etc.) is **had to . . .**

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In *questions* and *negatives* we use **do/does** (*present*) and **did** (*past*).

Present

do	I/we/you/they	have to . . . ?	I/we/you/they	don't	have to . . .
does	he/she/it		he/she/it	doesn't	

Past

did	I/we/you/they	have to . . . ?	I/we/you/they	didn't have to . . .
	he/she/it		he/she/it	

- What time **do you have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Kim **have to work** on Saturdays?
- Why **did they have to leave** the party early?

I **don't have to** do something = it is not necessary to do it

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get up** early.
- Da Ming **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to wait** very long for the bus.

D

must

You can also use **must** to say it is necessary to do something.

- You **must pass** a test before you can get a driver's license.
- In many countries, men **must do** military service.

We use **have to** more often than **must**, especially in spoken English.

34.1 Complete the sentences. Use *have to* or *has to* + one of these verbs:

hit read speak take travel ~~wear~~

1. My eyes are not very good. I *have to wear* _____ glasses.
2. At the end of the course, all the students _____ a test.
3. Marta is studying literature. She _____ a lot of books.
4. Alberto doesn't understand much English. You _____ to him very slowly.
5. Kate is not at home much. She _____ a lot for her job.
6. In tennis you _____ the ball over the net.

34.2 Complete the sentences. Use *have to* or *had to* + one of these verbs:

answer buy change go take wake ~~walk~~

1. We *had to walk* _____ home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. I _____ now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the store after work yesterday. I _____ some food.
4. This bus doesn't go all the way downtown. You _____ at First Avenue.
5. We took an exam yesterday. We _____ six questions out of ten.
6. I'm going to bed early. I _____ up early tomorrow.
7. Amy and her cousin can't go out with us tonight. They _____ care of Amy's little brother.

34.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1. I have to get up early tomorrow.
2. Eric had to wait a long time.
3. Liz has to go somewhere.
4. We had to pay a lot of money.
5. I have to do some work.
6. They had to leave early.

What time <i>do you have to get up</i>	?
How long _____	?
Where _____	?
How much _____	?
What exactly _____	?
Why _____	?

34.4 Write sentences with *don't/doesn't/didn't have to*

1. Why do you want to pay the bill now? You *don't have to pay* _____ it now.
2. Why is Hannah waiting? She _____ .
3. Why did you get up early? You _____ .
4. Why is Joel working so hard? He _____ .
5. Why do you want to leave now? We _____ .

34.5 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) *have to do* or *had to do*.

1. (every day) *I have to drive fifty miles to work every day.* _____
2. (every day) _____
3. (tomorrow) _____
4. (yesterday) _____
5. (last week) _____
6. (when I was younger) _____

A

Would you like . . . ? = Do you want . . . ?

We use **Would you like . . . ?** to offer things.

- A: **Would you like some coffee?**
B: No, thank you.
- A: **Would you like a piece of candy?**
B: Yes, thanks.
- A: **What would you like, tea or coffee?**
B: Tea, please.

We use **Would you like to . . . ?** to invite somebody.

- **Would you like to go for a walk?**
- A: **Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?**
B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you.)
- **What would you like to do tonight?**

Would you like a piece of candy?

Yes, thanks.



B

I'd like . . . is a polite way to say "I want." (I'd like = I would like)

- I'm thirsty. **I'd like a drink.**
- (*in a tourist office*) **I'd like a road map, please.**
- **I'd like to watch the news on television tonight.**

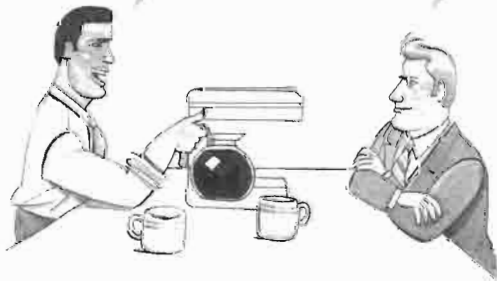
C

Would you like . . . ? and Do you like . . . ?

Would you like . . . ? / I'd like . . .

Would you like some coffee?

Yes, thanks.



Would you like some coffee? = Do you want some coffee?

- A: **Would you like to go to the movies tonight?** (= Do you want to go tonight?)
B: Yes, I'd love to.
- **I'd like an orange, please.** (= Can I have an orange?)
- **What would you like to do next weekend?**

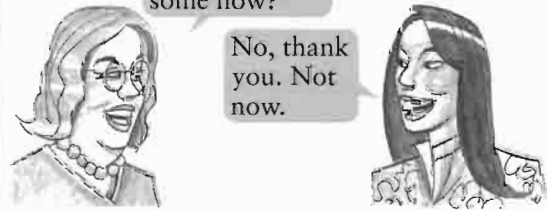
Do you like . . . ? / I like . . .

Do you like coffee?

Yes, I do.

Would you like some now?

No, thank you. Not now.



Do you like coffee? = Do you think coffee is good?

- A: **Do you like to go to the movies?** (*in general*)
B: Yes, I go to the movies a lot.
- **I like oranges.** (*in general*)
- **What do you like to do on weekends?**

35.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use *Would you like . . . ?*

1. *Would you like a piece of candy?*



2. _____



3. _____



4. _____



5. _____



6. _____



35.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use *Would you like to . . . ?* and the words in parentheses ().

- You want to go to the movies tonight. You hope Sue will go too.
You say: (go) *Would you like to go to the movies tonight?* _____
- You want to play tennis tomorrow. You hope Sue will play with you.
You say: (play) _____
- You've got some vacation pictures. Sue hasn't seen them yet.
You say: (see) _____
- You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. You hope Sue will go with you.
You say: (go) _____
- It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one.
You say: (borrow) _____

35.3 Which is right?

- ~~Do you like~~ / Would you like a piece of candy?" "Yes, thanks." (*Would you like* is right.)
- Do you like / Would you like bananas?" "Yes, I love them."
- ~~Do you like~~ / Would you like some ice cream?" "No, thank you."
- What do you like / would you like to drink?" "A glass of water, please."
- Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?" "Not now. Maybe later."
- I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
- What time do you like / would you like to have dinner tonight?
- Do you like / Would you like something to eat?" "No, thanks. I'm not hungry."
- Do you like / Would you like your new job?" "Yes, I'm enjoying it."
- I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.

A

Would you like to sit here? No, thanks. I'd rather sit on the floor.



Angela likes to sit on the floor. She doesn't want to sit on a chair. So she says:
I'd rather sit on the floor.
(= I would prefer to sit on the floor.)
I'd rather . . . = I would rather . . .

I would rather do something = I would prefer to do something

Positive

Negative

Question

I'd rather (I would rather)	do stay have be	I'd rather not (I would rather not)	do stay have be	Would you rather	do? stay? have? be?
--------------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------------------------	--------------------------	------------------	------------------------------

- I don't really want to go out. I'd rather stay home. (= I'd prefer to stay home.)
- "Should we go now?" "No, I'd rather wait until later."
- I want to go now, but Tom would rather wait until later.
- I don't like to be late. I'd rather be early.
- I'm feeling tired. I'd rather not go out tonight. (= I'd prefer not to go out.)
- Beth is feeling tired. She'd rather not go out tonight.
- We're not hungry. We'd rather not eat yet.
- "Do you want to go out tonight?" "I'd rather not." (= I'd rather not go out.)
- "Would you rather have milk or juice?" "Juice, please."
- Which would you rather do – go to the movies or watch a video at home?

B

We say "I'd rather do something." (*not* to do something)

- I'd rather sit on the floor. (*not* I'd rather to sit)
- Beth would rather not go out. (*not* would rather not to go)

But we say "I'd prefer to do something."

- I'd prefer to sit on the floor.
- Beth would prefer not to go out.

C

You can say "I'd rather . . . than . . ."

- I'd rather go out than stay home.
- I'd rather have a dog than a cat.
- We'd rather go to the movies than watch a video at home.
- I'd rather be at home right now than here.

36.1 Look at the pictures and complete B's sentences. Use *I'd rather* . . .

1. Would you like to sit here?



No, thanks. *I'd rather sit on the floor.*

2. Do you want to watch TV?



No, I _____ my book.

3. Would you like some tea?



Well, _____ coffee if you have some.

4. Should we go out now?



_____ until it stops raining.

36.2 Complete these questions. Use *would you rather* . . .

- Do you want to go out, or *would you rather stay* _____ home?
- Should we have dinner now, or _____ later?
- Would you like a glass of iced tea, or _____ water?
- Do you want to go to the movies, or _____ TV?

36.3 Complete the sentences with a verb. Sometimes you need *to*.

- I'd rather *stay* _____ home tonight. I'd prefer not *to go* _____ out.
- Should we walk home, or would you rather _____ a taxi?
- Do you want me to go with you, or would you prefer _____ alone?
- Vera doesn't want to go to college. She'd rather _____ a job.
- "Can I help you with your suitcase?" "No, thanks. I'd rather _____ it myself."
- I'd rather not _____ him. I'd prefer _____ him a letter.

36.4 Write sentences about yourself with *I'd rather . . . than*.

- Which would you prefer to be – a bus driver or an airline pilot?

I'd rather be an airplane pilot than a bus driver.

- Which would you prefer to be – a journalist or a teacher?

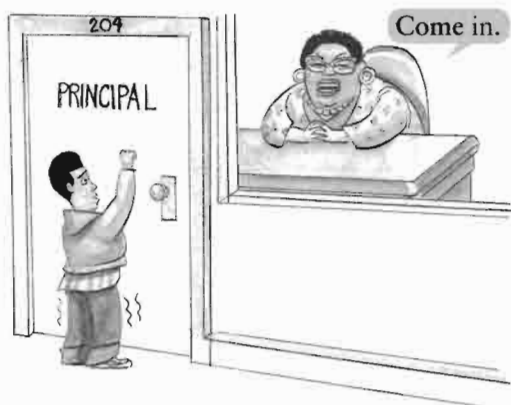
I'd rather _____.

- Where would you prefer to live – in a big city or a small town?

- Which would you prefer to have – a cat or a dog?

- What would you prefer to study – electronics or philosophy?

A



We use the *base form* (come/go/do/wait/be, etc.) when we tell someone to do something.

- "Come here and look at this!" "What is it?"
- I don't want to talk to you. **Go away!**
- Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm working.
- Goodbye. **Have** a nice time.

The negative is **don't** . . . (don't come/go/do/wait/be, etc.). (don't = do not)

- Stay here. Please **don't** go.
- **Don't** be silly!
- Be careful! **Don't** fall.

B

You can say **Let's** . . . when you want people to do things with you. (**let's** = let us)

- It's a nice day. **Let's** go out.
(= you and I can go out)

We use **let's** + *base form*
(**let's** go/do/have, etc.).

- Come on! **Let's** dance.
- Are you ready? **Let's** go.
- **Let's** have fish for dinner tonight.
- "Should we go out tonight?"
"No, I'm tired. **Let's** stay home."



C

The negative is **let's not**

- It's cold. **Let's not** go out. **Let's** stay home.
- **Let's not** have fish for dinner. **Let's** have chicken.

37.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Sometimes the sentence is positive (*go/eat, etc.*) and sometimes it is negative (*don't go / don't eat, etc.*). Use these verbs:

buy come drink sit sleep smile talk turn



37.2 Complete the sentences. Use *No, let's ...* + one of these:

~~go for a swim~~ go to a restaurant take the bus wait watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis?
2. Do you want to drive downtown?
3. Shall we go to the movies?
4. Should we have dinner at home?
5. Would you like to begin now?

No, let's go for a swim.

No, _____

37.3 Answer with *No, don't ...* or *No, let's not ...*

1. Shall I wait for you?
2. Should we go home now?
3. Shall we go out?
4. Should I close the door?
5. Should I call you tonight?
6. Should we wait for Dave?
7. Shall I turn on the light?
8. Should we take a taxi?

No, don't wait for me.

No, let's not go home now.

A



There's a man on the roof. There's a train at 10:30. There are seven days in a week.

Singular

there is . . . (there's)
is there . . . ?
there is not . . . (there isn't
or there's not)

- There's a big tree in the yard.
- There's a good movie on TV tonight.
- A: Do you have any money?
B: Yes, there's some in my wallet.
- A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?
B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

Plural

there are . . .
are there . . . ?
there are not . . . (there aren't)

- There are some big trees in the yard.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any mistakes in my letter?
B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there on a soccer team?
- There are 11 players on a soccer team.

B

there is and it is

there is



There's a book on the table.
(not It's a book on the table.)

it is



I like this book. It's funny. (it = this book)

Compare:

- "What's that noise?" "It's a train." (it = that noise)
- There's a train at 10:30. It's a fast train. (it = the 10:30 train)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it = this soup)

38.1 Springfield is a small town. Write sentences about Springfield with *There is/are* or *There isn't/aren't*. Use the information in the box.

1. A golf course?	No	1. <i>There isn't a golf course.</i>
2. Any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)	2. <i>There are a lot of restaurants.</i>
3. A hospital?	Yes	3. _____
4. A swimming pool?	No	4. _____
5. Any movie theaters?	Yes (two)	5. _____
6. A university?	No	6. _____
7. Any big hotels?	No	7. _____

38.2 Write about your town (or a town that you know). Use *There is/are/isn't/aren't*.

- There are a few restaurants.*
- There's a big park.*
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

38.3 Write *there is / there isn't / is there / there are / there aren't / are there*.

- Springfield isn't an old town. *There aren't* _____ any old buildings.
- Look! _____ a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
- "Excuse me, _____ a bank near here?" "Yes, at the end of the block."
- _____ five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters, and me.
- "How many students _____ in the class?" "Twenty."
- "Can we take a picture?" "No, _____ any film in the camera."
- "_____ a bus downtown from the airport?" "Yes. Every 20 minutes."
- "_____ any problems?" "No, everything is OK."
- "_____ nowhere to sit down. _____ any chairs."

38.4 Write sentences with *There are . . .*. Choose from the boxes.

seven	twenty-six	days	planets	a hockey team	the English alphabet
nine	thirty	days	players	a week	the solar system
eleven	fifty	letters	states	September	the USA

- There are seven days in a week.*
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

38.5 Write *there's / is there / it's / is it*.

- "*There's* _____ a flight at 10:30." "*Is it* _____ a non-stop flight?"
- I'm not going to buy this shirt. _____ too expensive.
- "What's wrong?" "_____ something in my eye."
- _____ a red car outside the house. _____ yours?
- "_____ anything good on TV tonight?" "Yes, _____ a movie at 8:00."
- "What's that building?" "_____ a school."
- "_____ a restaurant in this hotel?" "No, I'm sorry."

A

there was/were (*past*)

There is a train every hour.
It's 11:15 now.
There was a train at 11 o'clock.



Compare:

there is/are (*present*)

- There is a good movie on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a big hotel. There are 1,250 rooms.
- Are there any phone messages for me today?
- I'm hungry, but there isn't anything to eat.

there was/were (*past*)

- There was a good movie on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 1,250 rooms.
- Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry, but there wasn't anything to eat.

B

there has been / have been (*present perfect*)

There's been an accident.



- Look! **There's been** an accident. (*there's been = there has been*)
- This road is very dangerous. **There have been** a lot of accidents here.

Compare **there was** (*past*):

- **There was** an accident last night. (*not There has been an accident last night.*)

For present perfect and simple past, see Unit 19.

C

there will be

There will be rain tomorrow afternoon.



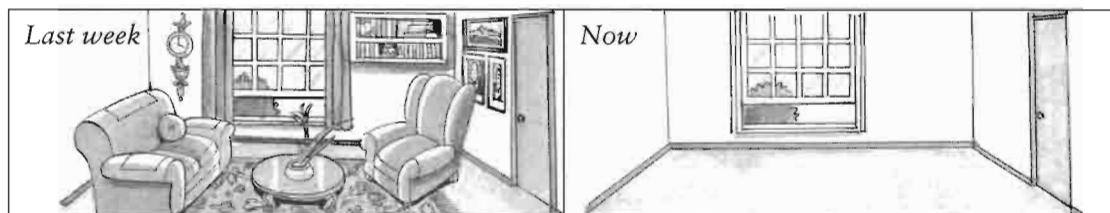
- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'm packing my things today because **there won't be** time tomorrow. (*there won't be = there will not be*)

Was/were Unit 10 **Has/have been** Units 16, 19-21 **Will** Unit 28 **There is/are** Unit 38
There and it Units 38, 40 **Some/any** Unit 77

Exercises

39.1 Look at the two pictures. The room is empty now. What was in the room last week? Write sentences with *There was . . .* or *There were . . .* + one of these:

a clock	an armchair	a sofa	some flowers
a coffee table	a rug	some books	three pictures



1. *There was a clock* _____ on the wall near the window.
2. _____ on the floor.
3. _____ on the wall near the door.
4. _____ in the middle of the room.
5. _____ on the table.
6. _____ on the shelves.
7. _____ in the corner near the door.
8. _____ opposite the armchair.

39.2 Write *there was / there wasn't / was there / there were / there weren't / were there*.

1. I was hungry but *there wasn't* _____ anything to eat.
2. *Were there* _____ any phone messages for me yesterday?
3. _____ a soccer game on TV last night. Did you see it?
4. "We stayed at a very nice hotel." "Really? _____ a swimming pool?"
5. "Did you buy any cherries?" "No, _____ any at the store."
6. "_____ many people at the meeting?" "No, very few."
7. We didn't visit the museum. _____ enough time.
8. I'm sorry I'm late. _____ a lot of traffic.
9. Twenty years ago _____ many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

39.3 Write *there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be*.

1. *There was* _____ a good movie on TV last night.
2. _____ twenty-four hours in a day.
3. _____ a party at work last Friday, but I didn't go.
4. "Where can I buy a newspaper?" "_____ a newsstand at the end of the block."
5. "Why are those police officers outside the bank?" "_____ a robbery."
6. When we got to the theater, _____ a long line outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, _____ somebody at the airport to meet you.
8. Ten years ago _____ five hundred children at the school. Now _____ more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. _____ a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don't think _____ any problems.

A

We use it for time/day/distance/weather.

Time



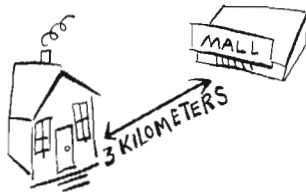
- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

Day



- What day is it?
- It's Thursday.
- It's March 16th.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

Distance



- It's three kilometers from our house to the mall.
- How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?
- It's a long way from here to the airport.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use *far* in questions (*is it far?*) and negatives (*it isn't far*).
We use *a long way* in positive sentences (*it's a long way*).

Weather



- It's raining.
- It rains a lot here.
- It isn't raining.
- It didn't rain yesterday.
- Is it snowing?
- Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/nice/cloudy/clear/dry/humid/windy/sunny/foggy/dark, etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare *it* and *there*:

- It rains a lot in the winter.
- It was very windy yesterday.
- It's very rainy in the winter.
- There was a strong wind yesterday.
- There is a lot of rain in the winter.

B

It's nice to . . . , etc.

It's	easy/difficult/impossible/dangerous/safe/expensive/interesting/nice/wonderful/terrible, etc.	to . . .
------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------

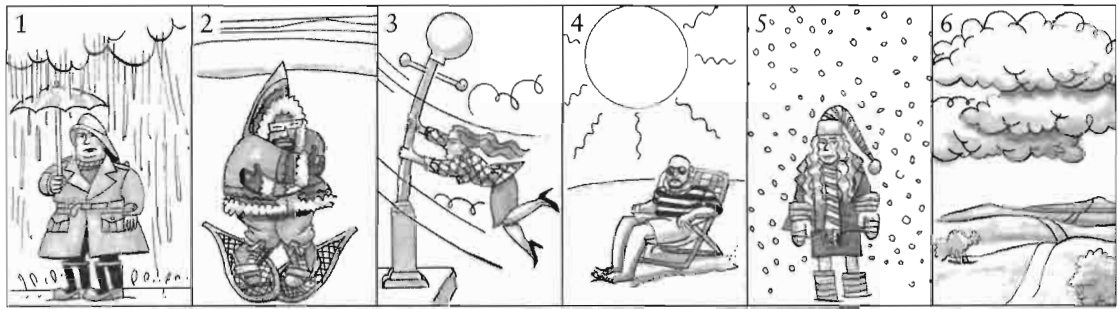
- It's nice to see you again. (it = to see you again)
- It's impossible to understand her. (it = to understand her)
- It wasn't easy to find your house. (it = to find your house)

C

Don't forget to use *it*.

- It's raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- Is it true that you are moving to Australia? (*not* Is true that . . . ?)

40.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use *It's*



1. *It's raining.* _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

40.2 Write *it's* (it is) or *is it*.

1. What time *is it* ?
2. We must go now. _____ very late.
3. _____ true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. "What day _____ today? Tuesday?"
"No, _____ Wednesday."
5. _____ OK to call you at the office?
6. _____ twelve kilometers from downtown to the airport.
7. "Do you want to walk to the restaurant?"
"I don't know. How far _____?"
8. _____ Linda's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! _____ impossible.

40.3 Write questions with *How far* . . . ?

1. (here / the station) *How far is it from here to the station?* _____
2. (the hotel / the beach) How _____ ?
3. (New York / Washington) _____
4. (your house / the airport) _____

40.4 Write *it* or *there*.

1. *It* rains a lot in the winter.
2. *There* was a strong wind yesterday.
3. _____ was a nice day yesterday.
4. We can't go skiing. _____ isn't any snow.
5. _____'s hot in this room. Open a window.
6. I was afraid because _____ was very dark.
7. _____ was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
8. _____'s a long way from here to the nearest gas station.

40.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

easy dangerous difficult nice impossible interesting	to	work in this office get up early visit different places go out alone see you again make friends
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. If you go to bed late, *it's difficult to get up early* _____ in the morning.
2. Hello, Jill. _____ How are you?
3. _____ There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work. _____
5. I like traveling. _____
6. Some cities are not safe. _____ at night.

A



She isn't tired, but **he is**.
(= he is tired)



He likes tea, but she **doesn't**.
(= she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words (he is *tired*, she doesn't *like tea*).

You can use these verbs in the same way.

am/is/are
was/were
have/has
do/does/did
can
will
might
should

- I haven't seen the movie, but my sister **has**. (= She has seen the movie.)
- A: Please help me.
B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you.)
- A: Are you tired?
B: I **was**, but I'm not now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now.)
- A: Do you think Marta will call tonight?
B: She **might**. (= she might call)
- A: Are you going to study tonight?
B: I **should**, but I probably **won't**.
(= I should study, but I probably won't study.)

You *cannot* use 'm/'s/'ve, etc. (*short forms*) in this way. You must use **am/is/are**, etc.

- She isn't tired, but he is. (*not* . . . but he's)

But you *can* use **isn't/haven't/won't**, etc. (*negative short forms*).

- My sister has seen the movie, but I **haven't**.
- "Are you and Jim working tomorrow?" "I am, but Jim **isn't**."

B

You can use **I am / I'm not**, etc., after **Yes** and **No**.

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**. / No, I'm **not**."
- "Will Alan be here tomorrow?" "Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**."
- "Is there a bus to the airport?" "Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**."

C

We use **do/does** for the *simple present* (see Units 6–7).

- I don't like hot weather, but Megan **does**. (= Megan likes hot weather.)
- Megan works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard.)
- "Do you enjoy your work?" "Yes, I **do**."

We use **did** for the *simple past* (see Unit 12).

- A: Did you and John like the movie?
B: I **did**, but John **didn't**. (= I liked it, but John didn't like it.)
- "I had a good time." "I **did** too." (= I had a good time too.)
- "Did it rain yesterday?" "No, it **didn't**."

41.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can, etc.) each time.

1. Kate wasn't hungry, but we were .
2. I'm not married, but my sister _____ .
3. Bill can't help you, but I _____ .
4. I haven't read the book, but Ed _____ .
5. Ken won't be here, but Sue _____ .
6. You weren't late, but I _____ .

41.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/can't, etc.).

1. Sam can play the piano, but I can't .
2. Marta is working today, but I _____ .
3. I was working, but my friends _____ .
4. Bob has been to China, but I _____ .
5. I'm ready to go, but Tom _____ .
6. I've seen the movie, but Kim _____ .

41.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don't/doesn't/didn't.

1. I don't like hot weather, but Megan does _____ .
2. Megan likes hot weather, but I don't _____ .
3. My mother wears glasses, but my father _____ .
4. You don't know Paul very well, but I _____ .
5. I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends _____ .
6. I don't watch TV much, but Peter _____ .
7. Kate lives in Canada, but her parents _____ .
8. You had breakfast this morning, but I _____ .

41.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1. I didn't go out last night, but my friends did _____ .
2. I like _____ , but _____ .
3. I don't _____ , but _____ .
4. I'm _____ .
5. I haven't _____ .

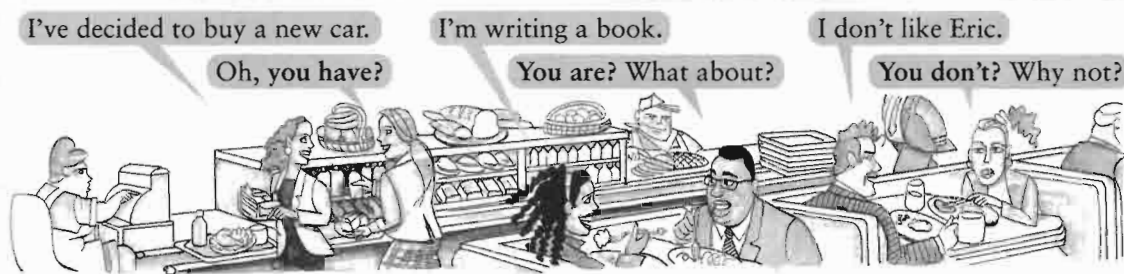
41.5 Write a verb – positive or negative.

1. "Are you tired?" "I was _____ earlier, but I'm not now."
2. Fu Chen is happy today, but he _____ yesterday.
3. The stores aren't open yet, but the post office _____ .
4. I don't have a video camera, but I know somebody who _____ .
5. I would like to help you, but I'm sorry, I _____ .
6. I don't usually go to work by car, but I _____ yesterday.
7. A: Have you ever been to Alaska?
B: No, but Sandra _____ . She went there on vacation last year.
8. "Do you and Luke watch TV a lot?" "I _____ , but Luke doesn't."
9. "Do you think Diane will pass her driving test?" "Yes, I'm sure she _____ ."
10. "Are you going out tonight?" "I _____ . I don't know for sure."

41.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I'm not, etc.

1. Are you Canadian? No, I'm not.
2. Do you have a car? _____
3. Is it snowing? _____
4. Do you feel OK? _____
5. Are you hungry? _____
6. Do you like classical music? _____
7. Will you be in Rome tomorrow? _____
8. Have you ever been to Oslo? _____
9. Did you go out last night? _____
10. Were you asleep at 1:00 A.M.? _____

A



You can say **you have? / you are? / you don't?**, etc., to show that you are interested or surprised.

- "You're late." "I am? I'm sorry."
- "I was sick last week." "You were? I didn't know that."
- "It's raining again." "It is? It was sunny ten minutes ago."
- "There's a letter for you." "There is? Where is it?"
- "Bill can't drive." "He can't? I didn't know that."
- "I'm not hungry." "You aren't? I am."
- "Sue isn't at work today." "She isn't? Is she sick?"

Use **do/does** for the *simple present* and **did** for the *simple past*.

- "I speak four languages." "You do? Which ones?"
- "Tom doesn't eat meat." "He doesn't? Does he eat fish?"
- "Nicole got married last week." "She did? Really?"

B

Tag questions

You can use **have you? / is it? / can't she?**, etc., at the end of a sentence.

These "mini-questions" are called *tag questions*.

It's a nice day, isn't it?



Yes, it's perfect!

A positive sentence → a *negative* tag question

It's a nice day,	isn't it?	Yes, it's perfect.
Karen lives in Seattle,	doesn't she?	Yes, that's right.
You closed the window,	didn't you?	Yes, I did.
Those shoes are nice,	aren't they?	Yes, very nice.
Tom will be here soon,	won't he?	Yes, probably.

A negative sentence → a *positive* tag question

That isn't your car,	is it?	No, my car is white.
You haven't met my mother,	have you?	No, I haven't.
Lucia doesn't have a car,	does she?	No, she doesn't.
You won't be late,	will you?	No, I'm never late.

42.1 Answer with *You do?* / *She doesn't?* / *They did?*, etc.

1. I speak four languages.
2. I work in a bank.
3. I didn't go to work yesterday.
4. Paula doesn't like me.
5. You look tired.
6. Julia called me last night.

<i>You do?</i>	Which ones?
_____	I work in a bank too.
_____	Were you sick?
_____	Why not?
_____	I feel fine.
_____	What did she say?

42.2 Answer with *You have?* / *You haven't?* / *She did?* / *She didn't?*, etc.

1. I've decided to buy a new car.
2. Tim doesn't eat meat.
3. I've already had dinner.
4. Sue can't drive.
5. I was born in Italy.
6. I didn't sleep well last night.
7. There's a good movie on TV.
8. I'm not happy.
9. I saw Amy last week.
10. Anne works in a factory.
11. I won't be here next week.
12. The clock isn't working.

<i>You have?</i>	What kind?
<i>He doesn't?</i>	Does he eat fish?
_____	When did you have it last?
_____	She should learn.
_____	I didn't know that.
_____	Was the bed uncomfortable?
_____	Are you going to watch it?
_____	Why not?
_____	How is she?
_____	What kind of factory?
_____	Where will you be?
_____	It was working yesterday.

42.3 Complete these sentences with a tag question (*isn't it?* / *haven't you?*, etc.).

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. It's a nice day, <i>isn't it</i> _____ ? | Yes, it's beautiful. |
| 2. These flowers are nice, _____ ? | Yes, what kind are they? |
| 3. Anne was at the party, _____ ? | Yes, but I didn't speak to her. |
| 4. You've been to Chile, _____ ? | Yes, many times. |
| 5. You speak Thai, _____ ? | Yes, but not very well. |
| 6. Bill looks tired, _____ ? | Yes, he works very hard. |
| 7. You'll help me, _____ ? | Yes, of course I will. |

42.4 Complete these sentences. Use a positive tag question (*is it?* / *do you?* etc.) or a negative tag question (*isn't it?* / *don't you?*, etc.).

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. You haven't eaten yet, <i>have you</i> _____ ? | No, I'm not hungry. |
| 2. You aren't tired, _____ ? | No, I feel fine. |
| 3. Mary is a very nice person, _____ ? | Yes, everybody likes her. |
| 4. You can play the piano, _____ ? | Yes, but I'm not very good. |
| 5. You don't know Mike's sister, _____ ? | No, I've never met her. |
| 6. John went to college, _____ ? | Yes, she studied economics. |
| 7. The movie wasn't very good, _____ ? | No, it was terrible. |
| 8. Anne lives near you, _____ ? | Yes, just a few blocks away. |
| 9. You won't tell her what I said, _____ ? | No, of course not. |

A

too and either



I'm happy.
I'm happy too.



I'm not happy.
I'm not happy either.



We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb.

- A: I'm happy.
B: I'm happy **too**. (or I am too.)
- A: I liked the movie.
B: I **liked** it **too**. (or I did too.)
- Mei Lan is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too**. (or Her husband is too.)

We use **either** after a *negative* verb.

- A: I'm not happy.
B: I'm **not** happy **either**.
(or I'm not either.)
- A: I can't cook.
B: I **can't** **either**.
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers **either**.

B

so am I / neither do I, etc.



so
neither

am/is/are . . .
was/were . . .
do/does . . .
did . . .
have/has . . .
can . . .
will . . .
would . . .



so am I = I am too

so do I = I do too (etc.)

- A: I'm working.
B: **So am I**. (= I'm working too.)
- A: I was late for work today.
B: **So was John**. (= John was late too.)
- A: I have a key.
B: **So do I**.
- A: **We** went to the movies last night.
B: You did? **So did we**.
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.
B: **So would I**.

neither am I = I'm not either

neither can I = I can't either (etc.)

- A: I haven't been to China.
B: **Neither have I**. (= I haven't either.)
- A: Anne can't cook.
B: **Neither can Tom**.
(= Tom can't either.)
- A: I **won't** (= will not) be here tomorrow.
B: **Neither will I**.
- A: I never go to the movies.
B: **Neither do I**.

Remember: **so am I** (not so I am), **neither have I** (not neither I have)

43.1 Write *too* or *either*.

- | | | |
|----|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. | I'm happy. | I'm happy <i>too</i> _____. |
| 2. | I'm not hungry. | I'm not hungry _____. |
| 3. | I'm going out. | I'm going out _____. |
| 4. | It rained on Saturday. | It rained on Sunday _____. |
| 5. | Gloria can't ride a bicycle. | She can't drive a car _____. |
| 6. | I don't like to go shopping. | I don't like to go shopping _____. |
| 7. | Tracy's mother is a teacher. | Her father is a teacher _____. |

43.2 Answer with *So . . . I* (*So am I / So do I / So can I*, etc.).

- | | | |
|----|--------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. | I went to bed late last night. | <i>So did I.</i> |
| 2. | I'm thirsty. | _____ |
| 3. | I've already read this book. | _____ |
| 4. | I need a vacation. | _____ |
| 5. | I'll be late tomorrow. | _____ |
| 6. | I was very tired this morning. | _____ |

Answer with *Neither . . . I*.

- | | | |
|-----|--------------------------------|-------|
| 7. | I can't go to the party. | _____ |
| 8. | I didn't call Alex last night. | _____ |
| 9. | I haven't eaten lunch yet. | _____ |
| 10. | I'm not going out tonight. | _____ |
| 11. | I don't have much time. | _____ |

43.3 You are talking to Maria. Write true sentences about yourself. Where possible, use *So . . . I* or *Neither . . . I*. Look at these examples carefully:



MARIA

I'm tired today.

You can say: *So am I.*

or *I'm not.*

I don't work very hard.

You can say: *Neither do I.*

or *I do.*



YOU

- | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------------|-------|
| 1. | I'm studying English. | _____ |
| 2. | I can ride a bicycle. | _____ |
| 3. | I'm not American. | _____ |
| 4. | I like to cook. | _____ |
| 5. | I don't like cold weather. | _____ |
| 6. | I slept well last night. | _____ |
| 7. | I've never been to India. | _____ |
| 8. | I don't write letters very often. | _____ |
| 9. | I'm going out tomorrow night. | _____ |
| 10. | I wasn't sick last week. | _____ |
| 11. | I didn't watch TV last night. | _____ |
| 12. | I go to the movies a lot. | _____ |

Isn't . . . , haven't . . . , don't . . . , etc. (Negatives)

A

We use not (n't) in negative sentences.

Positive → Negative

am	am not ('m not)	■ I'm not tired.
is	is not (isn't or 's not)	■ It isn't (or It's not) raining.
are	are not (aren't or 're not)	■ They aren't (or They're not) here.
was	was not (wasn't)	■ Brian wasn't hungry.
were	were not (weren't)	■ The stores weren't open.
have	have not (haven't)	■ I haven't finished my work.
has	has not (hasn't)	■ Sue hasn't been to Mexico.
will	will not (won't)	■ We won't be here tomorrow.
can	cannot (can't)	■ Eric can't drive.
could	could not (couldn't)	■ I couldn't sleep last night.
should	should not (shouldn't)	■ You shouldn't work so hard.
would	would not (wouldn't)	■ I wouldn't like to be an actor.
must	must not	■ They must not have a car.

B

don't/doesn't/didn't

Simple present negative

I/we/you/they do not (don't)
he/she/it does not (doesn't)

work/live/have, etc.

Simple past negative

I/they/he/she, etc. did not (didn't)

Positive → Negative

I want to go out. → I don't want to go out.
They work hard. → They don't work hard.
Liz has a car. → Liz doesn't have a car.
My father likes his job. → My father doesn't like his job.
I got up early this morning. → I didn't get up early this morning.
They worked hard yesterday. → They didn't work hard yesterday.
We played tennis. → We didn't play tennis.
Diane had dinner with us. → Diane didn't have dinner with us.

don't . . .

Look! → Don't look!
Wait for me. → Don't wait for me.

Sometimes do is the main verb.

Do something! → Don't do anything!
Sue does a lot on weekends. → Sue doesn't do much on weekends.
I did what you said. → I didn't do what you said.

44.1 Make these sentences negative.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. He's gone out. <i>He hasn't gone out.</i> | 4. It's cold today. _____ |
| 2. They're married. _____ | 5. We'll be late. _____ |
| 3. I've had dinner. _____ | 6. You should go. _____ |

44.2 Make these sentences negative. Use don't/doesn't/didn't.

- | | |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. She saw me. <i>She didn't see me.</i> | 4. He lives here. _____ |
| 2. I like cheese. _____ | 5. Go away! _____ |
| 3. They understood. _____ | 6. I did the dishes. _____ |

44.3 Make these sentences negative.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. She can swim. <i>She can't swim.</i> | 6. He'll be pleased. _____ |
| 2. They've arrived. _____ | 7. Call me tonight. _____ |
| 3. I went to the bank. _____ | 8. It rained yesterday. _____ |
| 4. He speaks Japanese. _____ | 9. I could hear them. _____ |
| 5. We were angry. _____ | 10. I have a camera. _____ |

44.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't, etc.).

- They aren't rich. They *don't* _____ have much money.
- "Would you like something to eat?" "No, thank you. I _____ hungry."
- I _____ find my glasses. Have you seen them?
- Eric _____ write letters very often. He prefers to use the phone.
- We can walk to the station from here. It _____ very far.
- "Where's Kim?" "I _____ know. I _____ seen her today."
- Be careful! _____ fall!
- I _____ have a ticket, so I couldn't go to the concert.
- I've been to Japan many times, but I _____ been to Korea.
- Julia _____ be here tomorrow. She's going away.
- "Who broke that window?" "Not me. I _____ do it."
- We didn't see what happened. We _____ looking at the time.

44.5



YOU

You ask Gary some questions. He answers "Yes" or "No." Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.



GARY

- | | | |
|----------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------|
| Are you married? | No. | 1. <i>He isn't married</i> |
| Do you live in Los Angeles? | Yes. | 2. <i>He lives in Los Angeles.</i> |
| Were you born in Los Angeles? | No. | 3. _____ |
| Do you like Los Angeles? | No. | 4. _____ |
| Would you like to live someplace else? | Yes. | 5. _____ |
| Can you drive? | Yes. | 6. _____ |
| Have you traveled abroad? | No. | 7. _____ |
| Do you read newspapers? | No. | 8. _____ |
| Are you interested in politics? | No. | 9. _____ |
| Do you watch TV at night? | Yes. | 10. _____ |
| Did you watch TV last night? | No. | 11. _____ |
| Did you go out last night? | Yes. | 12. _____ |

A

Positive **you are** You are eating.

Question **are you** Are you eating? What are you eating?

Positive
subject + verb

Question
verb + subject

I	am late.	→	Am	I late?
That seat	is free.	→	Is	that seat free?
She	was angry.	→	Why was	she angry?
David	has gone out.	→	Where has	David gone?
You	have been to Japan.	→	Have	you been to Japan?
They	will be here soon.	→	When will	they be here?
Paula	can swim.	→	Can	Paula swim?

Be careful with word order – the *subject* is after the first *verb*.

- Where has David gone? (*not* Where has gone David?)
- Are those people waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting . . . ?)
- When was the telephone invented? (*not* When was invented . . . ?)

B

do . . . ? / does . . . ? / did . . . ?

Simple present questions	do I/we/you/they	work/live/have (etc.) . . . ?
	does he/she/it	
Simple past questions	did you/she/they (etc.)	

Positive

Question

They	work hard.	→	Do they	work hard?
You	watch television.	→	How often do you	watch television?
Chris	has a car.	→	Does Chris	have a car?
She	gets up early.	→	What time does she	get up?
They	worked hard.	→	Did they	work hard?
You	had dinner.	→	What did you	have for dinner?
She	got up early.	→	What time did she	get up?

Sometimes **do** is the *main verb* (do you **do** / did he **do**, etc.).

- What do you usually **do** on weekends?
- “What does your brother **do**?” “He works in a bank.”
- “I broke my finger last week.” “How did you **do** that?”

C

Why isn't . . . ? / Why don't . . . ?, etc. (*Why + negative*)

- Where's Pedro? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* Why he isn't here?)
- **Why can't** Ratana come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Ratana can't . . . ?)
- **Why didn't** you call me last night?

45.1 Write questions.

1. I can swim. (and you?) *Can you swim?*
2. I work hard. (and Jim?) *Does Jim work hard?*
3. I was late this morning. (and you?) _____
4. I've had lunch. (and Anne?) _____
5. I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?) _____
6. I'm going out tonight. (and Paul?) _____
7. I like my job. (and you?) _____
8. I live near here. (and Nicole?) _____
9. I enjoyed the movie. (and you?) _____
10. I had a nice vacation. (and you?) _____

45.2



YOU

You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the questions.



1. (have / a car?) *Do you have a car?*
2. (use / a lot?) _____ it _____ ?
3. (use / yesterday?) _____
4. (enjoy driving?) _____
5. (a good driver?) _____
6. (ever / have / an accident?) _____

Yes, I do.
Yes, almost every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

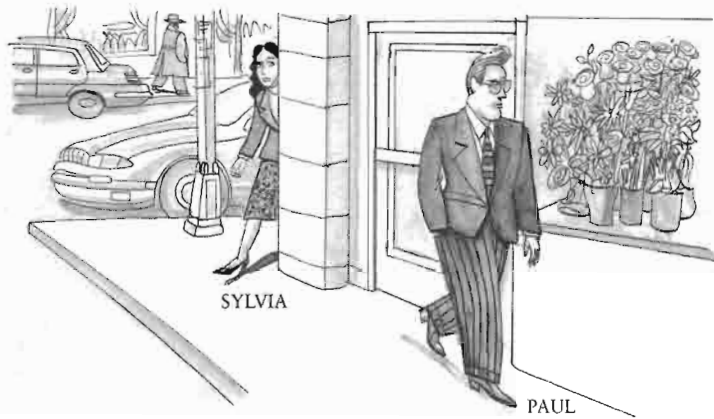
45.3 Put the words in the right order. All the sentences are questions.

1. (has / gone / where / David?) *Where has David gone?*
2. (working / Rachel / is / today?) *Is Rachel working today?*
3. (the children / what / are / doing?) What _____ ?
4. (made / is / how / cheese?) _____
5. (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) _____
6. (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) _____
7. (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) _____
8. (leave / what time / your plane / does?) _____
9. (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) _____
10. (to work / Anne / why / go / didn't?) _____

45.4 Complete the questions.

- | | | |
|-----|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. | I want to go out. | Where <i>do you want to go</i> _____ ? |
| 2. | Al and Joe aren't going to the party. | Why <i>aren't they going</i> _____ ? |
| 3. | I'm reading. | What _____ ? |
| 4. | Sue went to bed early. | What time _____ ? |
| 5. | My parents are going on vacation. | When _____ ? |
| 6. | I saw Tom a few days ago. | Where _____ ? |
| 7. | I can't come to the party. | Why _____ ? |
| 8. | I need some money. | How much _____ ? |
| 9. | Angela doesn't like me. | Why _____ ? |
| 10. | It sometimes rains. | How often _____ ? |
| 11. | I did the shopping. | When _____ ? |

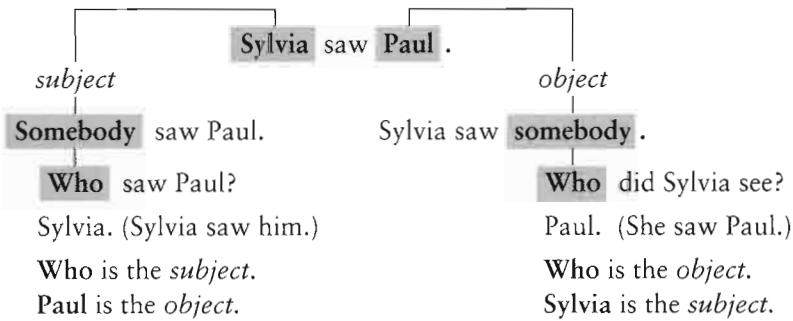
A



Sylvia saw Paul.

Who saw Paul?
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)

Who did Sylvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)



B

In these questions, **who/what** is the subject:

- **Who** lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?) (*not* Who does live)
- **What** happened? (= something happened – what?) (*not* What did happen?)
- **What's** happening? (**What's** = What is)
- **Who's** got my car keys? (**Who's** = Who has)

In these questions, **who/what** is the object:

- **Who** did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- **What** did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- **Who** are you calling?
- **What** was Sylvia wearing?

Compare:

- Justin likes chocolate. → **Who** likes chocolate? – Justin.
What does Justin like? – Chocolate.
- Lucas won some money. → **Who** won some money? – Lucas.
What did Lucas win? – Some money.

C

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas, etc. (something).

- **Who** is your favorite singer?
- **What** is your favorite song?

46.1 Write questions with *who* or *what*. In these questions, *who/what* is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
2. Something fell off the shelf.
3. Somebody wants to see you.
4. Somebody took my umbrella.
5. Something made me sick.
6. Somebody is coming.

Who broke the window?
What _____ ?
_____ me?

46.2 Write questions with *who* or *what* (subject or object).

1. I bought something.
2. Somebody lives in this house.
3. I called somebody.
4. Something happened last night.
5. Somebody knows the answer.
6. Somebody did the dishes.
7. Jane did something.
8. Something woke me up.
9. Somebody saw the accident.
10. I saw somebody.
11. Somebody has my pen.
12. This word means something.

What did you buy?
Who lives in this house?

46.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with *who* or *what*.

1. I lost XXXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me.
2. XXXXX called me last night. She wanted XXXXX.
3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXXX. He said XXXXX.
4. I hear that XXXXX got married last week. XXXXX told me.
5. I met XXXXX on my way home tonight. She told me XXXXX.
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXXX won. After the game, we XXXXX.
7. It was my birthday last week, and I got some presents. XXXXX gave me a book, and Catherine gave me XXXXX.

What did you lose?
Who found it?

A



JULIA

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking **to**?

preposition

In questions beginning **Who . . . ? / What . . . ? / Where . . . ? / Which . . . ?**, *prepositions* (to/from/with, etc.) usually go at the end.

- “Where are you from?” “I’m from Thailand.”
- “John was afraid.” “What was he afraid of?”
- “Who do these books belong to?” “They’re mine.”
- “Tom’s father is in the hospital.” “Which hospital is he in?”
- “Kate is going on vacation.” “Who is she going with?”
- “Can we talk?” “Sure. What do you want to talk about?”

B

What’s it like? / What are they like?, etc.



What’s it like? = What is it like?

What’s it like? = tell me something about it (is it good or bad?, big or small?, old or new?, etc.)

When we say, “What is it like?,” *like* is a *preposition*. It is not the *verb like*. (Do you like your new house?)

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| ■ A: There’s a new restaurant near my house. | ■ A: I met Nicole’s parents yesterday. |
| B: What’s it like? Is it good? | B: You did? What are they like? |
| A: I don’t know. I haven’t eaten there yet. | A: They’re very nice. |
| ■ A: What’s your new teacher like? | ■ A: Did you have a good vacation? |
| B: She’s really good. We learn a lot. | What was the weather like? |
| | B: It was great. It was sunny every day. |

47.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with *Who* or *What*.

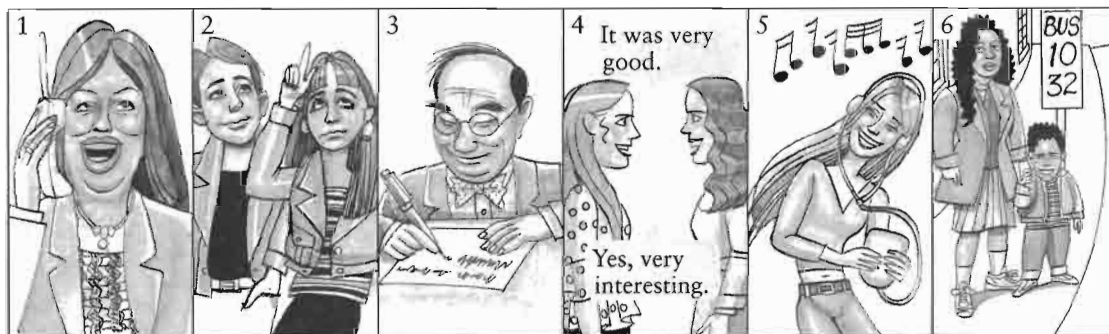
1. The letter is from XXXXX.
2. I'm looking for a XXXXX.
3. I went to the movies with XXXXX.
4. The movie was about XXXXX.
5. I gave the money to XXXXX.
6. The book was written by XXXXX.

Who is the letter from?

What _____ you _____ ?

47.2 Complete the questions about the pictures. Use one of these verbs + a preposition:

listen look talk talk wait write



1. Who *is she talking to* _____ ?
2. What _____ ?
3. Who _____ ?
4. What _____ ?
5. What _____ ?
6. Which bus _____ ?

47.3 Write questions with *Which*.

1. Tom's father is in the hospital.
2. We stayed at a hotel.
3. Jack belongs to a tennis club.
4. I went to high school in this town.

Which hospital is he in?

_____ you _____ ?

47.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with *What is/are ... like?*

1. (the roads) *What are the roads like?* _____
2. (the food) _____
3. (the people) _____
4. (the weather) _____

47.5 Ask questions with *What was/were ... like?*

1. Your friend has just come back from a trip. Ask about the weather.
What was the weather like? _____
2. Your friend has just come back from the movies. Ask about the movie.

3. Your friend has just finished a computer course. Ask about the classes.

4. Your friend has just come back from a business trip. Ask about the hotel.

A

what + *noun* (What color . . . ? / What kind . . . ?, etc.)

- What color is your car?
- What size is this shirt?
- What day is it today?
- What kind of job do you want? (or What type of job . . . ?)
- What color are your eyes?
- What nationality is she?
- What time is it?

what without a noun

- What's your favorite color?
- What do you want to do tonight?

B

which + *noun* (things or people)

- Which train did you catch – the 9:50 or the 10:30?
- Which doctor did you see – Doctor Vega, Doctor Gray, or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people.

- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

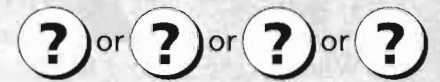
We use **who** for people (without a noun).

- Who is taller – Bill or Sam? (*not* Which is taller?)

C

What or which?

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps two, three, or four).



Which?

- We can go this way or that way. **Which way** should we go?
- There are four umbrellas here. **Which** is yours?

What is more general.

- **What** is the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- **What kind** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- **What color** are his eyes? (*not* Which color . . . ?)
- **Which color** do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- **What** is the longest river in the world?
- **Which** is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon, or the Nile?

D

How . . . ?

- "How was the party last night?" "It was great."
- "How do you usually get to work?" "By bus."





You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (how tall / how old / how often, etc.).

"How	tall are you?" "I'm five feet 10." (five feet 10 inches or one meter 70)
	big is the house?" "Not very big."
	old is your mother?" "She's 45."
	far is it from here to the airport?" "Ten miles." (about 17 kilometers)
	often do you use your car?" "Every day."
	long have they been married?" "Ten years."
	much was the taxi?" "Ten dollars."

48.1 Write questions with *What* . . . ?

- | | | |
|----|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. | This shirt is nice. | (size) <u>What size is it?</u> |
| 2. | I want a job. | (kind) <u>What kind of job do you want?</u> |
| 3. | I've got a new sweater. | (color) <u>What _____ ?</u> |
| 4. | I got up early this morning. | (time) _____ <u>get up?</u> |
| 5. | I like music. | (type) _____ |
| 6. | I want to buy a car. | (kind) _____ |

48.2 Complete the questions. Use *Which* . . . ?

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Which way</u> _____ should we go? | 2. _____ is yours? |
|  |  |
| 3. _____ do you want to see? | 4. _____ goes to the museum? |
|  |  |

48.3 Write *What*, *Which*, or *Who*.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>What</u> is that man's name? | 6. _____ is your favorite sport? |
| 2. <u>Which</u> way is it? Left or right? | 7. _____ is cheaper, meat or fish? |
| 3. Tea or coffee? _____ do you prefer? | 8. _____ is older, Anne or Justin? |
| 4. "_____ day is it today?" "Friday." | 9. _____ kind of camera do you have? |
| 5. This is a nice office.
_____ desk is yours? | 10. A: Mary has three cameras.
B: _____ camera does she use most? |

48.4 Complete the questions with *How* + adjective or adverb (*How high*, *How long*, etc.).

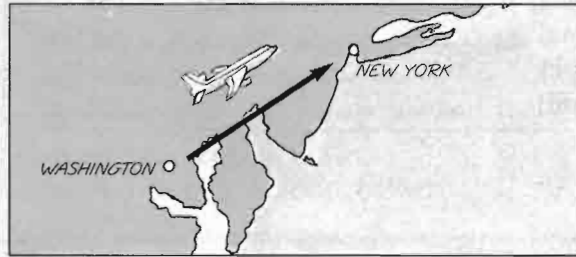
- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <u>How high</u> _____ is Mount Everest? | Almost 9,000 meters. |
| 2. _____ is it to the station? | About two miles. |
| 3. _____ is Sarah? | She's 26. |
| 4. _____ do the buses run? | Every ten minutes. |
| 5. _____ is the water in the pool? | Two meters. |
| 6. _____ have you lived here? | Almost three years. |

48.5 Write questions with *How* . . . ?

- Are you five feet nine? Five feet ten? Five feet eleven? How tall are you?
- Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? _____
- Are you 20 years old? 21? 22? _____
- Did you spend \$10? \$15? \$20? _____
- Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? _____
- Is it 2,000 miles from New York to Los Angeles? 2,500? 3,000? _____

A

How long does it take to get from . . . to . . . ?



- "How long does it take to get from Washington to New York by plane?"
"It takes one hour."
- "How long does it take to get from your house to the station by car?"
"It takes ten minutes to get from my house to the station."

B

How long does it take (to do something)?

How long	does did will	it take to . . . ?
----------	---------------------	--------------------

It	takes took will take	a week a long time three hours	to . . .
	doesn't didn't won't	take long	

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- How long did it take to get to the airport?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It took about an hour to get to the airport.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelet.
- It won't take long to fix the computer.

C

How long does it take you (to do something)?



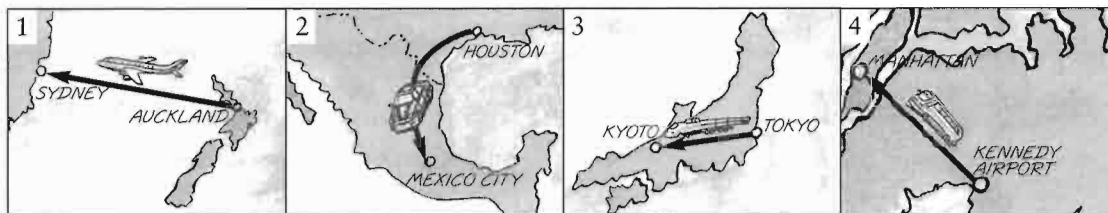
How long	does did will	it take	you Anne them	to . . . ?
----------	---------------------	---------	---------------------	------------

It	takes took will take	me Anne them	a week a long time three hours	to . . .
----	----------------------------	--------------------	--------------------------------------	----------

I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday night.
It took me three days to read it.

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took Tom an hour to do the shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take us an hour to cook dinner.

49.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with *How long . . . ?*



1. *How long does it take to get from Auckland to Sydney by plane?* _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

49.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to New York
It takes a day to fly from Tokyo to New York. _____
2. fly from your city/country to Australia

3. become a doctor in your country

4. walk from your house to the nearest school

5. get from your house to the nearest airport

49.3 Write questions with *How long did it take . . . ?*

1. She found a place to live. *How long did it take her to find a place to live?* _____
2. I walked to the station. _____ you _____ ?
3. He washed the windows. _____
4. I learned to ski. _____
5. They repaired the car. _____

49.4 Read the situations and write sentences with *It took . . .*

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
It took me three days to read the book. _____
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock, and we got home at 10:20.

3. I learned to fly last year. I had my first flying lesson in January. I got my pilot's license nine months later.

4. Mark drove to Houston yesterday. He left home at eight o'clock and got to Houston at 10:00.

5. Nicole began looking for a job a long time ago. She found a job last week.

6. (Now write a true sentence about yourself.)

Do you know where . . . ?,
I don't know what . . . , etc.

A

Do you know where Paula is?



We say: Where **is** Paula?
but: Do you know where Paula **is**?
(not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:
I know where Paula is.
I don't know where Paula is.
Can you tell me where Paula is?

Compare:

Who are those people?
How old is Nicole?
What time is it?
Where can I go?
How much is this camera?
When are you leaving town?
Where have they gone?
What was Dawn wearing?

but

Do you know Can you tell me	who those people are how old Nicole is what time it is where I can go	?
I know I don't know I don't remember	how much this camera is when you're leaving town where they've gone what Dawn was wearing	.

B

Questions with do/does/did (simple present and simple past)

Where **does** he live ?

Do you know where **he lives** ? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How do airplanes fly?
What does Jessica want?
Why did she go home?
Where did I put the key?

but

Do you know I don't know I don't remember I know	how airplanes fly what Jessica wants why she went home where I put the key	?
-----------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---

C

Questions beginning Is . . . ? / Do . . . ? / Can . . . ?, etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?
Have they left yet?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know I don't know	if or whether	Jack is at home they've left yet Brian can swim they live near here anybody saw you	?
-----------------------------	---------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---

You can use **if** or **whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know **if** they've got a car? *or* Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- I don't know **if** he's married. *or* I don't know **whether** he's married.

50.1 Answer these questions with *I don't know where/when/why . . . , etc.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Have your friends gone home? | (where) <i>I don't know where they've gone.</i> |
| 2. Is Kate in her office? | (where) I don't know _____. |
| 3. Is the building very old? | (how old) _____. |
| 4. Will Paul be here soon? | (when) _____. |
| 5. Was he angry because I was late? | (why) _____. |
| 6. Has Mary lived here a long time? | (how long) _____. |

50.2 Complete the sentences.

- (How do airplanes fly?) Do you know *how airplanes fly* _____?
- (Where does Susan work?) I don't know _____.
- (What did Peter say?) Do you remember _____?
- (Why did he go home early?) I don't know _____.
- (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know _____?
- (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember _____.

50.3 Which is right?

- Do you know what time is it / it is? (*it is* is right)
- Why are you / you are leaving?
- I don't know where are they / they are going.
- Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
- Where do you want / you want to go for vacation?
- Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?

50.4 Write questions with *Do you know if . . . ?*

- (Have they got a car?) *Do you know if they've got a car?* _____?
- (Are they married?) Do you know _____?
- (Does Sue know Bill?) _____?
- (Will Justin be here tomorrow?) _____?
- (Did he pass his exam?) _____?

50.5 Write questions beginning with *Do you know . . . ?*





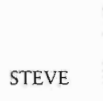
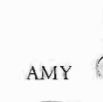


- (What does Tomiko want?) *Do you know what Tomiko wants?* _____?
- (Where is Lynn?) Do _____?
- (Is she working today?) _____?
- (What time does she start work?) _____?
- (Are the banks open tomorrow?) _____?
- (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) _____?
- (Did they go to Ji Yoo's party?) _____?

50.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- Do you know why *the train was late* _____?
- Do you know what time _____?
- Excuse me, can you tell me where _____?
- I don't know what _____?
- Do you know if _____?

A

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you.

 DIANE	<p>I'm enjoying my new job.</p> <p>My father isn't very happy.</p>
 SARAH TIM	<p>We're going to buy a house.</p>
 PETER	<p>I have to leave early.</p> <p>My sister has gone to Australia.</p>
 ANNE	<p>I can't find a job.</p>
 STEVE	<p>I'll call you.</p> <p>I don't like my job.</p>
 AMY	<p>My son doesn't like school.</p>
 MIKE	<p>You look tired.</p>
 YOU	<p>I feel fine.</p>

Present Past

am is	→	was
are	→	were
have has	→	had
can	→	could
will	→	would
do does	→	did
look feel (etc.)	→	looked felt (etc.)

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said.

- Diane said that **she was** enjoying her new job.
- She said that **her father wasn't** very happy.
- Sarah and Tim said that **they were** going to buy a house.
- Peter said that **he had** to leave early.
- He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.
- Anne said that **she couldn't** find a job.
- Steve said that **he would** call me.
- Amy said that **she didn't** like her job.
- She said that **her son didn't** like school.
- Mike said that I **looked** tired.
- I said that I **felt** fine.

B

say and tell

say (→ said)

- He **said** that he was tired.
(*not* He said me)
- What did she **say** to you? (*not* say you)

Do not say: "he said me," "I said Anne," etc.

tell (→ told)

- He **told me** that he was tired.
(*not* He told that . . .)
- What did she **tell you**? (*not* tell to you)











Do not say: "he told to me," "I told to Anne," etc.

C


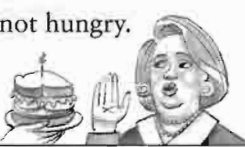



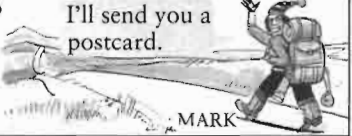



You can say:

- He said **that** he was tired. *or* He said he was tired. (*without that*)
- Amy told me **that** she didn't like her job. *or* Amy told me she didn't like her job.

51.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with *He/She/They said (that)*

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1.  I've lost my watch.
<u>He said he had lost his watch.</u> | 6.  I don't feel very well. |
| 2.  I'm very busy. | 7.  We'll be home late. |
| 3.  I can't go to the party. | 8.  I've just gotten back from vacation. |
| 4.  I have to go out. | 9.  I'm going to buy a new computer. |
| 5.  I'm learning Russian. | 10.  We don't have a key. |

51.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1 I'm enjoying my new job. DIANE 	2 I'm not hungry. EMILY 	3 I need it. DON 
4 I don't want to go. HANNAH 	5 You can have it. SHARON 	6 I'll send you a postcard. MARK 
7 Where's Robert? He's gone home. NICOLE 	8 I want to watch TV. JIRO 	9 I'm going to the movies. MARY 

- I saw Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job .
- Emily didn't want anything to eat. She said _____ .
- I wanted to borrow Don's ladder but he said _____ .
- Hannah was invited to the party but she said _____ .
- Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said _____ .
- Mark just left on vacation. He said _____ .
- I was looking for Robert. Nicole said _____ .
- "Why did Jiro stay home?" "He said _____ ."
- "Has Mary gone out?" "I think so. She said _____ ."

51.3 Write *say/said* or *tell/told*.

- | | |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. He <u>said</u> he was tired. | 7. The woman _____ she was a reporter. |
| 2. What did she <u>tell</u> you? | 8. The woman _____ us she was a reporter. |
| 3. Anne _____ she didn't like Peter. | 9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ them anything. |
| 4. Jack _____ me that you were sick. | 10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ anything. |
| 5. Please don't _____ Jim what happened. | |
| 6. Did Pat _____ she would be late? | |

A

work/go/be, etc. (*base form*)

We use the base form with **will/can/must**, etc.

will	■ Amy will be here soon.	} (see Units 28–29)
shall	■ Shall I open the window?	
might	■ I might call you later.	} (see Unit 30)
may	■ May I sit here?	
can	■ I can't meet you tomorrow.	} (see Unit 31)
could	■ Could you pass the salt, please?	
must	■ It's late. You must be tired.	(see Unit 32)
should	■ You shouldn't work so hard.	(see Unit 33)
would	■ Would you like some coffee?	(see Unit 35)

We use the base form with **do/does** and **did**.

do/does (<i>simple present</i>)	■ Do you work ?	} (see Units 6–7)
	■ They don't work very hard.	
	■ Elena doesn't know many people.	
	■ How much does it cost ?	
did (<i>simple past</i>)	■ What time did the train leave ?	} (see Unit 12)
	■ We didn't sleep well.	

B

To work / to go / to be, etc. (*infinitive*)

(I'm) going to . . .	■ I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.	(see Unit 27)
	■ What are you going to do ?	
(I) have to . . .	■ I have to go now.	(see Unit 34)
	■ Everybody has to eat .	
(I) want to . . .	■ Do you want to go out ?	(see Unit 51)
	■ They don't want to come with us.	
(I) would like to . . .	■ I'd like to talk to you .	(see Unit 35)
	■ Would you like to go out ?	
(I) used to . . .	■ Dave used to work in a factory.	(see Unit 25)

C

Working/going/playing, etc.

am/is/are + -ing (<i>present continuous</i>)	■ Please be quiet. I'm working .	} (see Units 3–4, 8, 26)
	■ Tom isn't working today.	
	■ What time are you going out ?	
was/were + -ing (<i>past continuous</i>)	■ It was raining , so we didn't go out.	} (see Units 13–14)
	■ What were you doing when the phone rang?	

52.1 Complete the sentences. Write: call Paul or to call Paul.

1. I'll call Paul .
2. I'm going to call Paul .
3. You can _____ .
4. Shall I _____ ?
5. I'd like _____ .
6. Do you have _____ ?
7. You should _____ .
8. I want _____ .
9. I might _____ .
10. Could you _____ ?

52.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Sometimes you need the base form (work, go, etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working, going, etc.).

do / doing	get / getting	sleep / sleeping	watch / watching
eat / eating	go / going	stay / staying	wear / wearing
fly / flying	listen / listening	wait / waiting	work / working

1. Please be quiet. I'm working .
2. I feel tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
3. What time do you usually _____ up in the morning?
4. "Where are you _____?" "To the bank."
5. Did you _____ television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It's _____ very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I'm not _____ to it.
8. They didn't _____ anything because they weren't hungry.
9. My friends were _____ for me when I arrived.
10. "Does Sharon always _____ glasses?" "No, only for reading."
11. "What are you _____ tonight?" "I'm _____ home."

52.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose the base form (work/go, etc.), the infinitive (to work / to go, etc.), or -ing (working/going, etc.).

1. Shall I open the window? (open)
2. It's late. I have to go now. (go)
3. Amy isn't working this week. She's on vacation. (work)
4. I'm tired. I don't want _____ out. (go)
5. It might _____. Take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have _____ tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I'm sorry I can't _____ you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He's _____ physics. (study)
9. Would you like _____ on a trip around the world? (go)
10. When you saw Chol Su, what was he _____? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going _____? (stay)
12. It's cold, but Carlos isn't wearing a jacket. He must _____ cold. (be)
13. "Where's Eric?" "He's _____ a bath." (take)
14. I used _____ a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15. He spoke very quietly. I couldn't _____ him. (hear)
16. You don't look well. I don't think you should _____ to work today. (go)
17. I don't know what he said. I wasn't _____ to him. (listen)
18. I'm sorry I'm late. I had _____ a phone call. (make)
19. Medical students must _____ courses in biology and chemistry. (take)
20. May I please _____ your phone? (use)

A

Verbs + to . . . (I want to do)

want	plan	decide	try	+ to . . . (to do / to work / to be, etc.)
hope	expect	offer	forget	
need	promise	refuse	learn	

- What do you want to do tonight?
- It's not very late. We don't need to go home yet.
- Tina has decided to sell her house.
- You forgot to turn off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to read my book, but I was too tired.

B

Verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

enjoy	stop	suggest	+ -ing (doing / working / being, etc.)
mind	finish		

- I enjoy dancing. (*not* enjoy to dance)
- I don't mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the movies.

I enjoy dancing.



C

Verbs + -ing or to . . .

like	love	start	continue	+ -ing (doing, etc.) or to . . . (to do, etc.)
prefer	hate	begin		

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- I prefer traveling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Anna loves dancing. or Anna loves to dance.
- I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- It started raining. or It started to rain.

D

Would like to . . . , etc.

would like	would love	+ to . . . (to do / to work / to be, etc.)
would prefer	would hate	

- Julia would like to meet you.
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- "Would you like to stay at the Metro Hotel?" "No, I'd prefer to stay at the Grand."
- I like this city very much. I wouldn't like to move.
- I'd hate to lose my address book.

53.1 Put the verb in the right form – to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy *dancing* . (dance)
2. What do you want *to do* tonight? (do)
3. Goodbye! I hope _____ you again soon. (see)
4. I learned _____ when I was five years old. (swim)
5. Have you finished _____ the kitchen? (clean)
6. I'm tired. I want _____ to bed. (go)
7. Do you enjoy _____ other countries? (visit)
8. The weather was nice, so I suggested _____ for a walk by the river. (go)
9. Where's Bill? He promised _____ here on time. (be)
10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind _____ . (wait)
11. What have you decided _____ ? (do)
12. Eric was very angry and refused _____ to me. (speak)
13. Where's Anna? I need _____ her something. (ask)
14. They were very upset and started _____ . (cry)
15. I'm trying _____ . (work)
Please stop _____ . (talk)

53.2 Complete the sentences with to ... or -ing. Use one of these verbs:

cook go help lose meet rain read see send wait walk watch

1. Julia would like *to meet* you.
2. Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys _____ .
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect _____ you.
4. Don't forget _____ us a postcard when you're on vacation.
5. "Should we take a taxi to the restaurant?" "If you want, but it isn't far. I don't mind _____ ."
6. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate _____ it.
7. Rita had a lot to do, so I offered _____ her.
8. What should we do this afternoon? Would you like _____ to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evening, I like _____ television.
10. "Do you want to go now?" "No, I'd prefer _____ a few minutes."
11. I'm not going out until it stops _____ .
12. Dinner is going to be late. I just started _____ .

53.3 Read the questions and complete the answers.

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Do you usually get up early ? 2. Do you ever go to museums? 3. Do you write letters often? 4. Have you ever been to Rome? 5. Do you ever travel by train? 6. Do you want to eat at home or go to a restaurant? | <p>Yes, I like <i>getting up early</i> OR <i>to get up early</i> .</p> <p>Yes, I love _____ .</p> <p>No, I don't like _____ .</p> <p>No, but I'd love _____ sometime.</p> <p>Yes, I enjoy _____ .</p> <p>I don't mind _____ a restaurant, but I'd prefer _____ home.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

53.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy _____ .
2. I don't like _____ .
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like _____ .
4. When I'm on vacation, I like _____ .
5. I don't mind _____ , but _____ .
6. I wouldn't like _____ .

A

I want you to . . .



The woman wants to leave.

The man doesn't want the woman to leave.
He wants her to stay.

We say:

I want	you somebody Anne	to do something
--------	-------------------------	-----------------

- I want you to be happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use *would like* in the same way.

- Would you like me to lend you some money?

B

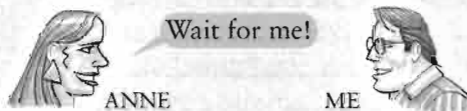
We also use this structure (*verb + somebody + to . . .*) with:

verb + *somebody* + *to . . .*

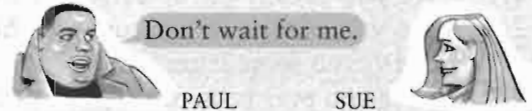
ask	Sue	asked	a friend	to lend	her some money.
tell	I	told	you	to be	careful.
advise	What do you	advise	me	to do?	
expect	I didn't	expect	them	to be	here.
persuade	We	persuaded	Eric	to come	with us.
teach	I	am teaching	my brother	to swim.	

C

I told you to . . . / I told you not to . . .



Anne told me to wait for her.



Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

D

make and let

After *make* and *let*, we do not use *to*.

- He's very funny. He **makes me laugh**. (*not* makes me to laugh)
- At school our teachers **made us work** very hard.
- Ada **let me use** her computer because mine wasn't working. (*not* let me to use)







You can say *Let's . . .* (= *Let us*) when you want people to do things with you.

- Come on! **Let's dance**.
- "Do you want to go out tonight?" "No, I'm tired. **Let's stay home**."

54.1 Write sentences beginning *I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?*

1. (you have to come with me) *I want you to come with me.* _____
2. (listen carefully) I want _____.
3. (please don't be angry) I don't _____.
4. (shall I wait for you?) Do you _____.
5. (don't call me tonight) _____.
6. (you should meet Sarah) _____.

54.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

<p>1 I'm sick. You should see a doctor.</p>  <p>BRIAN YOU</p>	<p>2 Where's the station? Turn left after the bridge.</p>  <p>YOU</p>	<p>3 Can you help me?</p>  <p>LINDA YOU</p>
<p>4 Don't call after 11 o'clock.</p>  <p>YOU SUE</p>	<p>5 Can I use your phone? Sure.</p>  <p>YOU YOSHI</p>	<p>6 Do you play the piano? Yes, my mother taught me.</p>  <p>YOU LEE</p>

1. Brian was sick. I advised *him to see a doctor* _____.
2. I wanted to get to the station. A woman told _____.
3. Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked _____.
4. Sue is going to call later. I told _____.
5. I wanted to make a phone call. Yoshi let _____.
6. Lee's mother taught _____.

54.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes *to* is necessary (*to go / to wait*, etc.); sometimes *to* is not necessary (*go/wait*, etc.).

arrive borrow get go leave make repeat tell think wait

1. Please stay! I don't want you *to leave* _____ yet.
2. I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her _____ it.
3. "Should we begin?" "No, let's _____ a few minutes."
4. Are they already here? I expected them _____ much later.
5. Kevin's parents didn't want him _____ married.
6. I want to stay here. You can't make me _____ with you.
7. "Is that your bicycle?" "No, it's John's. He let me _____ it."
8. Mika can't come to the party. She told me _____ you.
9. Do you want something to drink? Would you like me _____ some coffee?
10. "Achara doesn't like me." "What makes you _____ that?"

A

Kelly wanted a newspaper,
so she went to the store.

Why did she go to the store?
To buy a newspaper.

She went to the store to buy
a newspaper.



To . . . (to buy / to see, etc.) tells us *why* a person does something.

- “Why are you going out?” “To get some bread.”
- Amy went to the airport to meet her friend.
- Fu Chen turned on the television to watch the news.
- I’d like to go to Mexico to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something)

- We need some money to buy food.
- I don’t have time to watch television.

B

to . . . and for . . .

to + *verb*

(to buy / to see, etc.)

- I went to the store to buy a newspaper.
(*not* for buy)
- They’re going to Brazil to see their friends.
- We need some money to buy food.

for + *noun*

(for a newspaper / for food, etc.)

- I went to the store for a newspaper.
- They’re going to Brazil for a holiday.
- We need some money for food.

C

wait for . . .

- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

wait to (do something)

- I’m waiting to talk to the manager.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to . . .

- I can’t leave yet. I’m waiting for John to call.
- Are you waiting for the mail to come?



Go to . . . , go for . . . Unit 56 Something to eat / nothing to do, etc. Unit 80
Enough to/for . . . Unit 92 Too . . . to/for . . . Unit 93

55.1 Write sentences beginning *I went to . . .*. Choose from the boxes.

the station	the post office
a coffee shop	the supermarket

buy some food	get some stamps
catch a train	meet a friend

- I went to the station to catch a train.*
- I went _____.
- _____.
- _____.

55.2 Finish the sentences. Choose from the box.

to open this door	to wake him up	to see who it was
to watch the news	to read the newspaper	to get some fresh air

- I turned on the television *to watch the news*.
- Alice sat down in an armchair _____.
- Do I need a key _____?
- I went for a walk by the river _____.
- Dave was sleeping. I knocked on his door _____.
- The doorbell rang, so I looked out the window _____.

55.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use *to . . .*

- I went to the store *to buy a newspaper*.
- I'm very busy. I haven't got time _____.
- I called Amy _____.
- I'm going out _____.
- I borrowed some money _____.

55.4 Write *to* or *for*.

- Ampol went to the store *to* buy some bread.
- We went to a restaurant _____ have dinner.
- Robert wants to go to college _____ study economics.
- I'm going to Toronto _____ an interview next week.
- I'm going to Vancouver _____ visit some friends of mine.
- Do you have time _____ a cup of coffee?
- I was late this morning. I didn't have time _____ comb my hair.
- Everybody needs money _____ live.
- My office is very small. There's only enough room _____ a desk and a chair.
- A: Excuse me, are you waiting _____ use the phone?
B: No, I'm waiting _____ somebody.

55.5 Finish these sentences. Choose from the list:

~~John / call~~ it / to arrive you / tell me the film / begin

- I can't leave yet. I'm waiting *for John to call*.
- I sat down in the movie theater and waited _____.
- We called an ambulance and waited _____.
- "Do you know what to do?" "No, I'm waiting _____."

A

go to . . . (go to work / go to San Francisco / go to a concert, etc.)

- What time do you usually go to work?
- I'm going to China next week.
- Tom didn't want to go to the concert.
- What time did you go to bed last night?
- I went to the dentist last week.

go to →

go home (without to)

- I'm going home now. (*not* going to home)

B

go on . . .

go on	a trip
	a tour
	an excursion
	a cruise
	vacation
	strike

- Children often go on school trips.
- When we were in Egypt, we went on a tour of the Pyramids.
- We're going on vacation next week.
- Last year I went to Costa Rica on vacation.
- The workers have gone on strike. (= they are refusing to work)

C

go for . . .

go (somewhere) for	a walk
	a run
	a swim
	lunch, dinner, etc.

- "Where's John?" "He went for a walk."
- Did you go for a run this morning?
- The water looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- Should we go out for dinner? I know a good restaurant.

D

go + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (swimming/skiing, etc.) and also for shopping:

I go	shopping
he is going	swimming
we went	fishing
they have gone	sailing
she wants to go	skiing
	jogging
	running, etc.

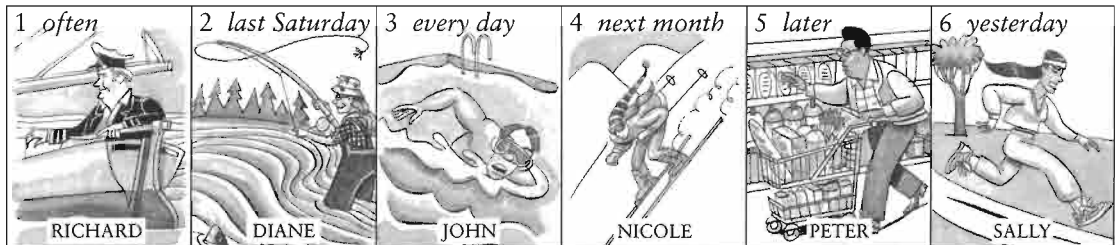


- Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's go swimming. (*or* Let's go for a swim.)
- Richard has a small boat, and he often goes sailing.
- I went jogging before breakfast this morning.

56.1 Write *to/on/for* where necessary.

1. I'm going *to* China next week.
2. Richard often goes *—* sailing.
3. Sue went *—* Mexico last year.
4. Would you like to go *—* the movies tonight?
5. Brian goes *—* jogging every morning.
6. I'm going out *—* a walk. Do you want to come?
7. I'm tired because I went *—* bed very late.
8. Mark is going *—* a trip *—* Turkey next week.
9. The weather was warm and the lake was clean, so we went *—* a swim.
10. The taxi drivers went *—* strike when I was in New York.
11. I need some stamps, so I'm going *—* the post office.
12. It's late. I have to go *—* home now.
13. Would you like to go *—* a tour of the city?
14. Do you want to go out *—* lunch today?
15. My parents are going *—* a cruise this summer.

56.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use *go/goes/going/went + -ing*.



1. Richard has a boat. He often *goes sailing*.
2. Last Saturday Diane went *—*.
3. John *—* every day.
4. Nicole is going to Colorado next month. She's *—*.
5. Peter is going out later. He has to *—*.
6. Sally *—* after work yesterday.

56.3 Complete these sentences. Use the words in the box. Use *to/on/for* if necessary.

a swim	bed	home	shopping	the bank
a walk	Hawaii	riding	skiing	vacation

1. The water looks great! Let's go *for a swim*.
2. "Is John at home?" "No, he went *—* to get some money."
3. I'm going *—* now. I have to buy some presents.
4. I was very tired last night. I went *—* early.
5. I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went *—* early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go *—* almost every weekend.
7. Richard has a horse. He goes *—* a lot.
8. It's a beautiful day! Would you like to go *—* in the park?
9. A: Are you going *—* soon?
B: Yes, next month. We're going *—*.

Get

A

get a letter / get a job, etc. (get + *noun*) = receive/buy/find

you don't have something

you get it

you have it

- "Did you **get** my post card?" "Yes, I **got** it yesterday." (= receive)
- I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- (*on the phone*) "Hello, can I speak to Amy, please?"
"Sure. I'll **get** her." (= find and bring back)
- Is it difficult to **get** a job in your country? (= find)

B

get hungry / get cold / get tired, etc. (get + *adjective*) = become

you're not hungry

you get hungry

you are hungry

- If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
- I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she **gets better** soon.
- We **got wet** because we didn't take an umbrella.

Also: get married

get dressed = put your clothes on

get lost = lose your way

■ Nicole and Frank are **getting married** soon.

■ I got up and **got dressed** quickly.

■ We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**.

C

get to a place = arrive

- I usually **get to work** before 8:30. (= arrive at work)
- We left Boston at 10:15 and **got to Ottawa** at 11:30.

get here/there (without to)

- How did you **get here**? By bus?

get home (without to)

- What time did you **get home** last night?

get to

D

get in / get out / get on / get off



get in (a car)

get out (of a car)



get on

(a bus / a train / a plane)

get off

- Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate **got into** the car . . .)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but* a man got out of the car)
- We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** at Church Street.

57.1 Complete these sentences. Use *get/gets* and choose from the box.

my letter	a lot of snow	a room	the manager
your jacket	a new computer	a ticket	the job

- I wrote to you last week. Did you *get my letter* _____ ?
- Where did you _____ ? It's really nice.
- We couldn't _____. All the hotels were full.
- I had an interview with the manager, but I didn't _____.
- Chicago has terrible weather. They _____ in winter.
- "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, if I can _____."
- I'm going to _____. The one I have is too slow.
- I have a problem. Could you _____, please?

57.2 Complete these sentences. Use *getting* + one of these words:

~~cold~~ dark late married ready

- Drink your coffee. It's *getting cold* _____.
- Turn on the light. It's _____.
- "I'm _____ next week." "Oh, really? Congratulations!"
- "Where's Karen?" "She's _____ to go out."
- It's _____. It's time to go home.

57.3 Complete the sentences. Use *get/got* + one of these words:

angry better ~~hungry~~ lost married nervous old wet

- If you don't eat, you'll *get hungry* _____.
- Don't go out in the rain. You'll _____.
- My brother _____ last year. His wife's name is Julia.
- My boss _____ and shouted at us yesterday.
- We tried to find the hotel, but we _____.
- Everybody wants to stay young, but we all _____.
- The beginning of the film wasn't very good, but it _____.
- Most people _____ before exams.

57.4 Write sentences with *I left . . . and got to . . .*

- (home / 7:30 → work / 8:15) *I left home at 7:30 and got to work at 8:15.*
- (Toronto / 10:15 → New York / 11:45)
I left Toronto at 10:15 and _____.
- (the party / 11:15 → home / midnight)

Write a true sentence about yourself.

- I left _____.

57.5 Write *got in / got out of / got on / got off*.

- Mei Lan *got in* _____ the car and drove away.
- I _____ the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
- Isabel _____ the car, locked the doors, and went into a store.
- I made a stupid mistake. I _____ the wrong train.

A

Do is a general word for actions.

- What are you **doing** tonight? (*not* What are you making)
- "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll **do** it."
- Julia's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?

- "What do you do?" "I work in a bank."

B

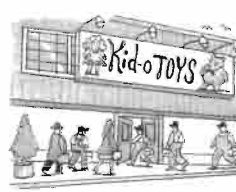
Make = produce/create. For example:



She's **making** coffee.



He **made** a cake.



They **make** toys.



It was **made** in China.

Compare do and make:

- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters, and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you do in your free time? Read? Play sports?
B: I **make** clothes. I **make** all of my dresses. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with do

do
homework
(somebody) a favor
an exercise
(your) best
housework
the laundry
the dishes

- Have the children **done** their homework?
- Erin, could you **do** me a favor?
- I have to **do** four exercises for homework tonight.
- I **did** my best, but I didn't win the race.
- I hate **doing** housework, especially cleaning.
- Tim usually **does** the laundry on Saturdays.
- I cooked, so you should **do** the dishes.

D

Expressions with make

make
a mistake
an appointment
a phone call
a list
a bed
(a) noise

- I'm sorry, I **made** a mistake.
- I need to **make** an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make** a phone call.
- Have you **made** a shopping list?
- Sometimes I forget to **make** my bed in the morning.
- It's late. Please don't **make** any noise.

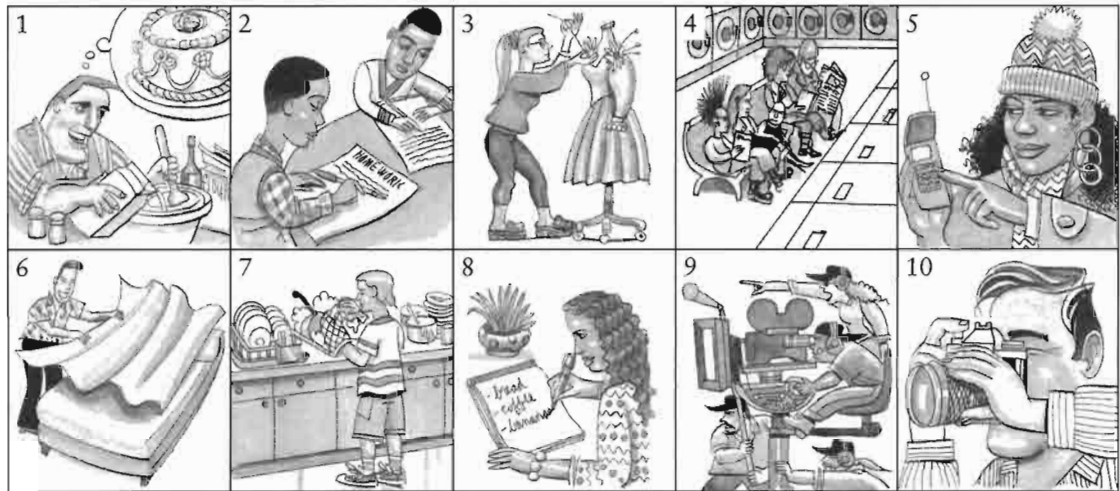
We say **make** a film/movie *but* **take** a photograph/picture.

- When was this movie **made**? *but* When was this photograph **taken**?

58.1 Write *make/making/made* or *do/doing/did/done*.

1. "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll *do* _____ it."
2. What did you _____ last weekend? Did you leave town?
3. Do you know how to _____ bread?
4. Paper is _____ from wood.
5. Fernando didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and _____ nothing.
6. "What do you _____?" "I'm a doctor."
7. I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you _____ it?
8. "What do they _____ in that factory?" "Shoes."
9. I'm _____ some coffee. Would you like some?
10. Why are you mad at me? I didn't _____ anything wrong.
11. "What are you _____ tomorrow afternoon?" "I'm working."

58.2 What are these people doing?



1. *He's making a cake.* _____
2. They _____ .
3. She _____ .
4. _____ .
5. _____ .
6. _____ .
7. _____ .
8. _____ .
9. _____ .
10. _____ .

58.3 Write *make* or *do* in the correct form.

1. I hate *doing* _____ housework, especially cleaning.
2. Why do you always _____ the same mistake?
3. "Can you _____ me a favor?" "It depends on what it is."
4. "Have you _____ your homework?" "Not yet."
5. I need to see the dentist, but I haven't _____ an appointment yet.
6. Chayan _____ his best, but he didn't pass his driver's test.
7. I painted the door, but I didn't _____ it very well.
8. When you've finished Exercise 1, you can _____ Exercise 2.
9. There's something wrong with the car. The engine is _____ a strange noise.
10. It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever _____ .
11. Let's _____ a list of all the things we have to _____ today.

A

have and have got (see Unit 9)

I have (something) or I've got (something) = it is mine

- I have a new car. or I've got a new car.
- She has long hair. or She's got long hair. (= She has got)
- Do Amy and Ed have any children? or Have Amy and Ed got any children?
- Tim doesn't have a job. or Tim hasn't got a job.
- How much time do you have? or How much time have you got?

Also:

I have	a headache / a toothache / a stomachache / a pain (in my leg, etc.)
I've got	a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a fever / the flu, etc.

- I have a headache. or I've got a headache.
- Do you have a cold? or Have you got a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have?, etc.

- When I first met Li Jing, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- Did you have a cold last week?

B

have breakfast / have a good time, etc.

In these expressions have = eat or drink. You can't use "have got."

have	a sandwich / a pizza / a snack, etc.	■ "Where's Amy?" "She's having lunch."
	a cup of coffee / a glass of milk, etc.	■ "Have a cookie!" "Oh, thank you."
	something to eat/drink	■ I had three cups of coffee this morning.

■ Can I have something to eat?

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

have	a vacation / a party	■ We're having a party next Friday. Can you come?
	a dream	■ Fu Chen had an accident on the way to work.
	an accident	■ Sandra just had a baby. It's a boy.
	a baby	■ Jack and I never agree. We have an argument every
	an argument	time we meet.

We also say:

have	fun / a (good) time
	a (nice) day / a (nice) weekend / a (great) vacation
	a (good) flight / a (great) trip, etc.

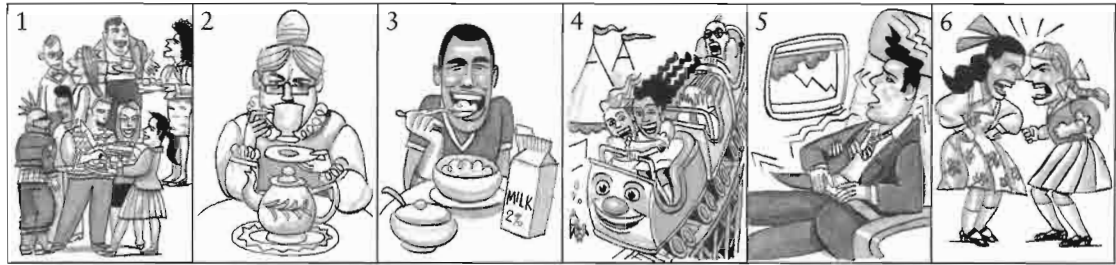
- "My vacation starts tomorrow." "Have a great time!"
- "How was your trip?" "We had a terrible flight, but after that I had fun."
- "Did you have a nice weekend?" "Yes, thanks. Very nice!"
- I'm having a bad day. Everything is going wrong.

59.1 Write the correct form of *have* or *have got*.

- I didn't have* _____ time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
- "*Has Lisa got* OR *Does Lisa have* a car?" "No, she can't drive." (Lisa / have?)
- He can't open the door. _____ a key. (he / not / have)
- _____ a cold last week. He's better now. (Eric / have)
- What's wrong? _____ a headache? (you / have?)
- We wanted to go by taxi, but we _____ enough money. (we / not / have)
- Liz is very busy. _____ much free time. (she / not / have)
- _____ any problems when you were on vacation? (you / have?)

59.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list.

an argument breakfast a cup of tea a terrible flight fun a party



- They're having a party.* _____
- She _____
- He _____
- They _____
- _____
- _____

59.3 What do you say in these situations? Use *have*.

- Mariko is going on vacation. What do you say to her before she goes?
Have a nice vacation! _____
- You meet Claire at the airport. She has just arrived. Ask her about her flight.
Did you have a good flight? _____
- Jiro is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?

- It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.

- Paul has just come back from vacation. Ask him about his vacation.

- Rachel is going out tonight. What do you say to her before she leaves?

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use *have/had* and choose from the list.

an accident a glass of water a baby a party a bad dream something to eat

- We *had a party* _____ a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.
- "Should we _____?" "No, I'm not hungry."
- I was thirsty, so I _____.
- I _____ last night. It woke me up.
- Soo Mi is a very good driver. She has never _____.
- Rachel is going to _____. It will be her first child.

A

People



<i>subject:</i>	I	we	you	he	she	they
<i>object:</i>	me	us	you	him	her	them

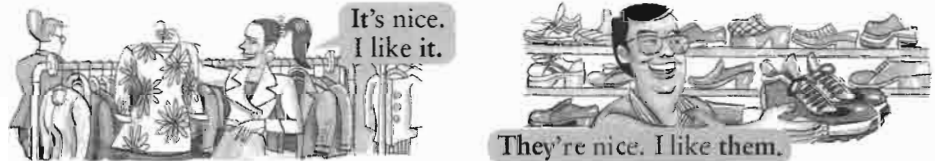
Subject

Object

I	I know Lynn.	Lynn knows me.	me
we	We know Lynn.	Lynn knows us.	us
you	You know Lynn.	Lynn knows you.	you
he	He knows Lynn.	Lynn knows him.	him
she	She knows Lynn.	Lynn knows her.	her
they	They know Lynn.	Lynn knows them.	them

B

Things



<i>subject:</i>	it	they
<i>object:</i>	it	them

- I don't want **this** book. You can have **it**.
- I don't want **these** books. You can have **them**.
- Diane never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

C

We use *me/her/them*, etc. (object) after a *preposition* (for/to/with, etc.).

- This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- We're going to the movies. Do you want to come **with us**?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go **with them**?
- "Where's the newspaper?" "You're sitting **on it**."

give *it/them* to . . .

- I need that book. Please give **it to me**.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him**, please?

60.1 Complete the sentences with *him/her/them*.

1. I don't know those girls. Do you know *them* _____ ?
2. I don't know that man. Do you know _____ ?
3. I don't know those people. Do you know _____ ?
4. I don't know Dave's wife. Do you know _____ ?
5. I don't know Mr. Kwang. Do you know _____ ?
6. I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know _____ ?
7. I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know _____ ?

60.2 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/you/she/her, etc.*

1. I want to see her, but *she* _____ doesn't want to see *me* _____ .
2. They want to see me, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
3. She wants to see him, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
4. We want to see them, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
5. He wants to see us, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
6. They want to see her, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
7. I want to see them, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
8. You want to see her, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .

60.3 Write sentences with *I like . . . , I don't like . . . , or Do you like . . . ?*

1. I don't eat tomatoes. *I don't like them.* _____
2. Eric is a very nice man. I like _____ .
3. This jacket isn't very nice. I don't _____ .
4. This is my new car. Do _____ ?
5. Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I _____ .
6. These are my new shoes. _____ ?

60.4 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/he/him, etc.*

1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at *her* _____ ?
2. "Do you know that man?" "Yes, I work with _____ ."
3. Where are the tickets? I can't find _____ .
4. I can't find my keys. Where are _____ ?
5. We're going out. You can come with _____ .
6. Mary likes music. _____ plays the piano.
7. I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of _____ .
8. I'm talking to you. Please listen to _____ .
9. Where is Anne? I want to talk to _____ .
10. My brother has a new job. _____ doesn't like _____ very much.

60.5 Complete the sentences.

1. I need that book. Can you *give it to me* _____ ?
2. He wants the key. Can you give _____ ?
3. She wants the keys. Can you _____ ?
4. I need that letter. Can you _____ ?
5. They want the money. Can you _____ ?
6. We need the photographs. Can you _____ ?

A















<p>I → my we → our you → your he → his she → her they → their it → its</p>	<p>I like my job. We like our jobs. You like your job. He likes his job. She likes her job. They like their jobs.</p> <p>Hawaii (= it) is famous for its beaches.</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

We use my/your/his, etc. + a noun

my hands	his mother	her new car
our house	your best friend	their room

B

his/her/their

	AMY		NICK		MR. and MRS. LEE
	her car (= Amy's car)		his bicycle		their son
	her husband (= Amy's husband)		his sister		their daughter
	her children (= Amy's children)		his parents		their children

C

its and it's

its Hawaii is famous for its beaches.
it's (= it is) I like Hawaii. It's a beautiful place. (= It is a beautiful place.)

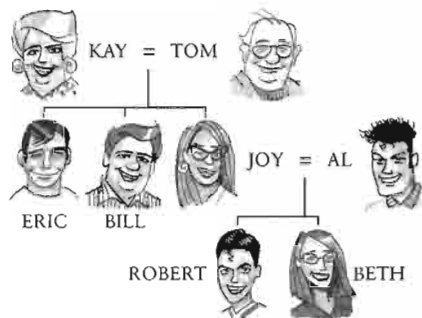
61.1 Complete these sentences.

- I'm going to wash my hands .
- She's going to wash _____ .
- We're going to wash _____ .
- He's going to wash _____ .
- They're going to wash _____ .
- Are you going to wash _____ ?

61.2 Complete these sentences.

- He lives with his parents .
- They live with _____ parents.
- We _____ parents.
- Mary lives _____ .
- I _____ parents.
- John _____ .
- Do you live _____ ?
- Most children _____ .

61.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with *his/her/their*.



- I saw Kay with her husband, Tom.
- I saw Joy and Al with _____ children.
- I saw Al with _____ wife, Joy.
- I saw Eric with _____ brother, Bill.
- I saw Joy with _____ brother Bill.
- I saw Kay and Tom with _____ son Bill.
- I saw Joy with _____ parents.
- I saw Beth and Robert with _____ parents.

61.4 Write *my/our/your/his/her/their/its*.

- Do you like your job?
- I know Mr. Chu, but I don't know _____ wife.
- Mr. and Mrs. Romo live in San Francisco. _____ son lives in Canada.
- We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all _____ friends.
- Amy is going out with _____ friends tonight.
- I like tennis. It's _____ favorite sport.
- "Is that _____ car?" "No, I don't have a car."
- I want to call Amy. Do you know _____ phone number?
- Do you think most people are happy with _____ jobs?
- I'm going to wash _____ hair before I go out.
- That's a beautiful tree. _____ leaves are a beautiful color.
- John has a brother and a sister. _____ brother is 25, and _____ sister is 21.

61.5 Complete the sentences. Use *my/his/their, etc.*, with one of these words:

coat homework house husband job key name

- Jim doesn't enjoy his job . It's not very interesting.
- I can't open the door. I don't have _____ .
- Amy is married. _____ works in a bank.
- It's very cold today. Put on _____ when you go out.
- "What are the children doing?" "They're doing _____ ."
- "Do you know that man?" "Yes, but I don't know _____ ."
- We live on Main Street. _____ is on the corner of Main and First.

A



I → my → mine	It's my money.	It's mine.
we → our → ours	It's our money.	It's ours.
you → your → yours	It's your money.	It's yours.
he → his → his	It's his money.	It's his.
she → her → hers	It's her money.	It's hers.
they → their → theirs	It's their money.	It's theirs.

B

We use **my/your**, etc. + a *noun* (my hands / your book, etc.)

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Mary gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use **mine/yours**, etc., without a noun.

- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Mary gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun.

- "Is this **his** camera or **hers**?" "It's **his**."

C

a friend of **mine** / a friend of **his** / some friends of **yours**, etc.

- I went to the movies with a friend of **mine**. (*not* a friend of me)
- Tom was with a friend of **his**. (*not* a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of **yours**? (*not* friends of you)

D

Whose . . . ?

- Whose book is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book?, etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun.

- Whose money is this? } It's mine.
- Whose is this? }
- Whose shoes are these? } They're John's.
- Whose are these? }



Exercises

62.1 Complete the sentences with *mine/yours*, etc.

1. It's your money. It's yours .
2. It's my bag. It's _____ .
3. It's our car. It's _____ .
4. They're her shoes. They're _____ .
5. It's their house. It's _____ .
6. They're your books. They're _____ .
7. They're my glasses. They're _____ .
8. It's his coat. It's _____ .







62.2 Choose the right word.

1. It's their/theirs problem, not our/ours. (*their* and *ours* are right)
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends tonight.
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7. They've got two children but I don't know their/theirs names.
8. Can we use your telephone? Our/Ours isn't working.

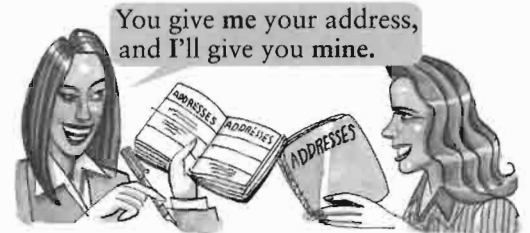
62.3 Complete these sentences. Use *friend(s) of mine/yours*, etc.

1. I went to the movies with a friend of mine .
2. They went on vacation with some friends of theirs .
3. She's going out with a _____ .
4. We had dinner with some _____ .
5. I played tennis with a _____ .
6. Tom is going to meet a _____ .
7. Do you know those people? Are they _____ ?

62.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

<p>1</p> <p>Whose car is this?</p> <p>It's theirs.</p> 	<p>2</p> <p>_____ is this?</p> <p>It's _____.</p> 
<p>3</p> <p>_____ these?</p> <p>They _____.</p> 	<p>4</p> <p>_____ ?</p> <p>_____</p> 
<p>5</p> <p>_____ ?</p> <p>_____</p> 	<p>6</p> <p>_____ ?</p> <p>_____</p> 

A



I, etc.
(Unit 60)

me, etc.
(Unit 60)

my, etc.
(Unit 61)

mine, etc.
(Unit 62)



I know Tom.

Tom knows me.

It's my car.

It's mine.



We know Tom.

Tom knows us.

It's our car.

It's ours.



You know Tom.

Tom knows you.

It's your car.

It's yours.



He knows Tom.

Tom knows him.

It's his car.

It's his.



She knows Tom.

Tom knows her.

It's her car.

It's hers.



They know Tom.

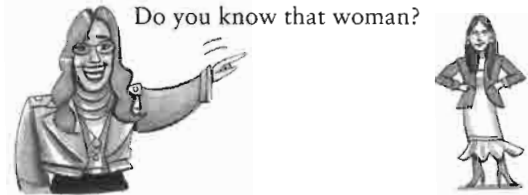
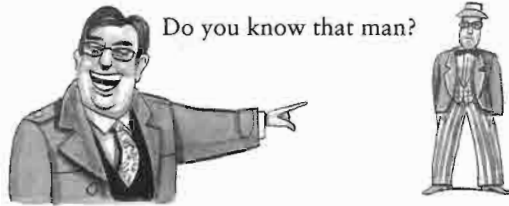
Tom knows them.

It's their car.

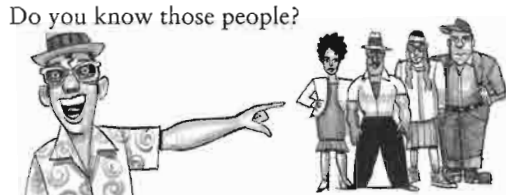
It's theirs.

- "Do you know that man?" "Yes, I know **him**, but I can't remember **his name**."
- She was very happy because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our** house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen **them**?
B: Yes, **they're** playing with **their** friends in the park.
- That's **my** pen. Can you give it to **me**, please?
- "Is this **your** umbrella?" "No, it's **yours**."
- He didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him** **hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm going out with a friend of **mine** tonight. (*not* a friend of me)

63.1 Answer the questions in the same way.



1. Yes, I know him, but I can't remember his name .
2. Yes, I know _____ , but I can't remember _____ .



3. Yes, I _____ , but I _____ names.
4. Yes, I _____ , but _____ .

63.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- We invited her to stay with us at our house .
- He invited us to stay with _____ house.
- They invited me to stay with _____ house.
- I invited them _____ .
- She invited us _____ .
- Did you invite him _____ ?

63.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- I gave him my address, and he gave me his .
- I gave her _____ address, and she gave me _____ .
- He gave me _____ address, and I gave _____ .
- We gave them _____ address, and they gave _____ .
- She gave him _____ address, and _____ .
- You gave us _____ address, and _____ .
- They gave you _____ address, and _____ .

63.4 Write *him/her/yours*, etc.

- Where's Amy? Have you seen her _____ ?
- Where are my keys? Where did I put _____ ?
- This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to _____ ?
- We wrote to John but he didn't answer _____ letter.
- "I can't find my pen. Can I use _____ ?" "Sure."
- We're going to the movies. Why don't you come with _____ ?
- Did your sister pass _____ driver's test?
- Some people talk about _____ jobs all the time.
- Last night I went out for dinner with a friend of _____ .

A



He's looking at **himself**.



They're enjoying **themselves**.

I	→ me	→ myself
he	→ him	→ himself
she	→ her	→ herself
you	→ you	→ yourself
		→ yourselves
we	→ us	→ ourselves
they	→ them	→ themselves

- I looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- He cut **himself** with a knife.
- She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- Please help **yourself**. (one person)
- Please help **yourselves**. (two or more people)
- We had a good vacation. **We** enjoyed **ourselves**.
- They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves**.

B

Compare:

me/him/them, etc.



She is looking at **him**.
└ different people ┘



- You never talk to **me**.
- I didn't pay for **them**.
- Did I hurt **you**?

myself/himself/themselves, etc.



He is looking at **himself**.
└ the same person ┘



- Sometimes I talk to **myself**.
- They paid for **themselves**.
- Be careful! Don't hurt **yourself**.

C

by myself / by yourself, etc. = alone

- I went on vacation **by myself**. (= I went alone)
- "Was she with friends?" "No, she was **by herself**."

D

each other

- Kim and Amy are good friends. They know **each other** well.
(= Kim knows Amy / Amy knows Kim)
- Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:



- Ed and Sue looked at **each other**.
(= Ed looked at Sue / Sue looked at Ed)



- Ed and Sue looked at **themselves**.
(= Ed looked at Ed / Sue looked at Sue)


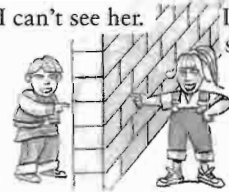


64.1 Complete the sentences with *myself/yourself, etc.*

1. He looked at *himself* _____ in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with _____.
3. Jennifer had a good time in Mexico. She enjoyed _____.
4. My friends had a good time in Mexico. They enjoyed _____.
5. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about _____.
6. I want to know more about you. Tell me about _____. (*one person*)
7. Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of _____! (*two people*)

64.2 Write sentences with *by myself / by yourself, etc.*

1. I went to South America alone. *I went to South America by myself.* _____
2. When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he _____.
3. Don't go out alone. Don't _____.
4. I went to the movies alone. I _____.
5. My sister lives alone. My sister _____.
6. Many people live alone. Many people _____.

64.3 Write sentences with *each other*.

<p>I like her.</p> 	<p>I like him.</p>	<p>I can't see her.</p> 	<p>I can't see him.</p>	<p>I often write to her.</p> 	<p>I often write to him.</p> 
1. <i>They like each other.</i> _____		2. They can't _____		3. They _____	

<p>I don't know him.</p> 	<p>I don't know him.</p>	<p>I'm sitting next to her.</p> 	<p>I'm sitting next to him.</p>	<p>I just gave her a present.</p> 	<p>I just gave her a present.</p>
4. _____		5. _____		6. _____	

64.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

each other ourselves/yourselves/themselves us/you/them

1. Paul and I live near *each other* _____.
2. Who are those people? Do you know *them* _____?
3. You can help Taro, and Taro can help you. So you and Taro can help _____.
4. There's food in the kitchen. If you and Bob are hungry, you can help _____.
5. We didn't go to Megan's party. She didn't invite _____.
6. When we go on vacation, we always enjoy _____.
7. Diane and I are very good friends. We've known _____ for a long time.
8. "Did you see Sam and Sue at the party?" "Yes, but I didn't speak to _____."
9. Many people talk to _____ when they're alone.

A

My camera.



KATE

Kate's camera
(her camera)

My car.



MY BROTHER

my brother's car
(his car)



the manager's office
(his or her office)

We normally use -s for *people*.

- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr. Suzuki's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr. Suzuki)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is a **man's** name. Paula is a **woman's** name.

You can use -s without a noun after it.

- Mi Ja's hair is longer than **Megan's**. (= Megan's hair)
- "Whose umbrella is this?" "It's **my mother's**." (= my mother's umbrella)
- "Where were you last night?" "I was at **Paul's**." (= Paul's house)

B

friend's and friends'



MY FRIEND

My house.

my friend's house = *one friend*
(= his house or her house)

We write -s after friend/student/mother, etc. (*singular*):

- my **mother's** car (*one mother*)
- my **father's** car (*one father*)



MY FRIENDS

Our house.

my friends' house = *two or more friends*
(= their house)

We write -' after friends/students/parents, etc. (*plural*):

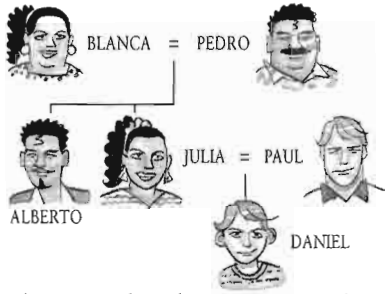
- my **parents'** car (*two parents*)

C

We use of . . . for *things, places, etc.*

- Look at the roof of **that building**. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning of **the film**. (*not* the film's beginning)
- What's the name of **this town**?
- Do you know the cause of **the problem**?
- We had to sit in the back of **the theater**.
- Madrid is the capital of **Spain**.

65.1 Look at the family tree. Write sentences about the people in the family.



Blanca and Pedro are married. They have a son, Alberto, and a daughter, Julia. Julia is married to Paul. Julia and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1. (Pedro / husband) Pedro is Blanca's husband.
2. (Julia / mother) Julia is Daniel's mother.
3. (Blanca / wife) Blanca is _____ wife.
4. (Alberto / brother) Alberto _____
5. (Alberto / uncle) _____ uncle.
6. (Julia / wife) Julia _____
7. (Blanca / grandmother) _____
8. (Julia / sister) _____
9. (Paul / husband) _____
10. (Paul / father) _____
11. (Daniel / nephew) _____

65.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use only one word.

JANE ANDY ALICE DIANE DAVE

1. Whose is this? Alice's.
2. Whose is this? _____
3. And this? _____
4. And these? _____
5. And this? _____
6. And these? _____

65.3 Are these sentences right? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. my sister's house
2. What is the name of this town? OK
3. Do you like the color of this coat? _____
4. Do you know the phone number of Bill? _____
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. _____
6. Write your name at the top of the page. _____
7. For me, morning is the best part of the day. _____
8. The favorite color of Paula is blue. _____
9. When is the birthday of your mother? _____
10. The house of my parents isn't very big. _____
11. The walls of this house are very thin. _____
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. _____
13. Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? _____
14. The manager of the hotel is in a meeting right now. _____

A



He has a camera.



She's waiting for a taxi.



It's a beautiful day.

a . . . = one thing or person

- Alice works in a bank. (*not* in bank)
- Can I ask a question? (*not* ask question)
- I don't have a car.
- There's a woman at the bus stop.

B

an (*not* a) before a/e/i/o/u

- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting program on TV last night.

Also: an hour ("h" is not pronounced: an ~~hour~~)

But: a university (pronounced *yuniversity*)

a European country (pronounced *yuropean*)

Another (= an + other) is one word.

- Can I have another cup of coffee?

C

We use a/an . . . when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an . . . for jobs.

- A: What do you do?
B: I'm a dentist. (*not* I'm dentist.)
- "What does Mark do?" "He's an engineer."
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?



66.1 Write a or an.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>an</u> old book | 4. _____ airport | 7. _____ university |
| 2. _____ window | 5. _____ new airport | 8. _____ hour |
| 3. _____ horse | 6. _____ organization | 9. _____ economic problem |

66.2 What are these things? Choose from the list.

airplane	flower	insect	planet	sport
bird	fruit	mountain	river	vegetable

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A duck is <u>a bird</u> . | 6. Saturn is _____. |
| 2. A carrot is _____. | 7. A banana is _____. |
| 3. Tennis is _____. | 8. The Amazon is _____. |
| 4. A 747 is _____. | 9. A rose is _____. |
| 5. Everest is _____. | 10. A fly is _____. |

66.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect auto mechanic ~~dentist~~ electrician photographer sales clerk taxi driver



- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <u>She's a dentist.</u> | 5. _____ |
| 2. He's _____. | 6. _____ |
| 3. He _____. | 7. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 8. And you? I'm _____. |

66.4 Write sentences. Choose from each box. Use a/an.

I want to ask you	I can't ride	+	old house	office
Lucia works in	Jim lives in		artist	foreign language
Tom never wears	My brother is		party	hat
Amy wants to learn	Tonight I'm going to		question	bicycle

1. I want to ask you a question.
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

A

The plural of a noun is usually -s.

singular = one → *plural* = two or more

a flower → some flowers
 a week → two weeks
 a nice place → many nice places
 this hat → these hats



a flower



some flowers

Spelling (see Appendixes 5.1–5.2)

-s / -sh / -ch / -x → -es

bus → buses dish → dishes church → churches
 box → boxes

also

potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes

-y → -ies

baby → babies dictionary → dictionaries party → parties

but -ay / -ey / -oy → -ys

day → days monkey → monkeys boy → boys

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves leaf → leaves wife → wives

B

These things are plural in English:



scissors



glasses



pants



jeans



shorts



pajamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of pants / a pair of pajamas, etc.

- I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (*not* a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do *not* end in -s.

this man → these men
 a woman → some women
 a child → many children

one foot → two feet
 a tooth → all my teeth
 a mouse → some mice

that sheep → those sheep
 a fish → a lot of fish

Also: a person → two people / some people / a lot of people, etc.

- She's a nice person.
- They are nice people. (*not* nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have, etc.

- A lot of people speak English. (*not* speaks)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

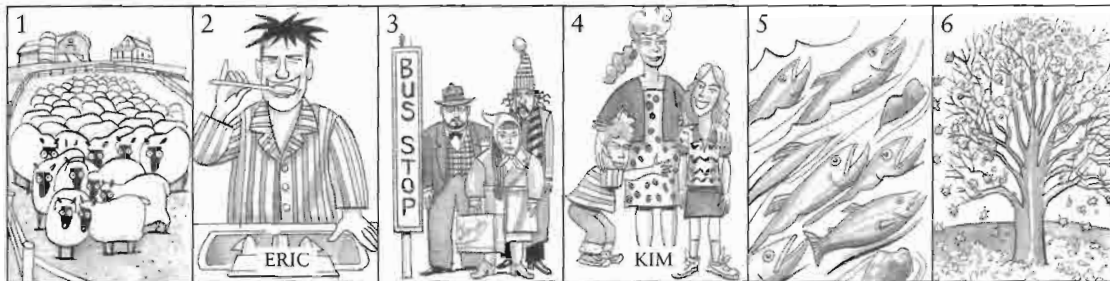
Police is plural.

- "The police are here." "Why? What do they want?"

67.1 Write the plural.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. flower <u>flowers</u> | 5. umbrella _____ | 9. family _____ |
| 2. boat _____ | 6. address _____ | 10. foot _____ |
| 3. woman _____ | 7. knife _____ | 11. holiday _____ |
| 4. city _____ | 8. sandwich _____ | 12. potato _____ |

67.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. There are a lot of <u>sheep</u> in the field. | 4. Kim has two _____. |
| 2. Eric is brushing his _____. | 5. There are a lot of _____ in the river. |
| 3. There are three _____ at the bus stop. | 6. The _____ are falling from the tree. |

67.3 Are these sentences right? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. I'm going to buy some flowers. OK
2. I need a new jeans. a new pair of jeans OR some new jeans
3. It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. _____
4. There was a woman in the car with two mens. _____
5. Sheep eat grass. _____
6. Fernando is married and has three childs. _____
7. Most of my friend are student. _____
8. He put on his pajama and went to bed. _____
9. We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. _____
10. Do you know many persons in this town? _____
11. I like your pant. Where did you get it? _____
12. Montreal is usually full of tourist. _____
13. I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. _____
14. This scissor isn't very sharp. _____

67.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It's a nice place. Many people go there on vacation. (go or goes?)
2. Some people _____ always late. (is or are?)
3. Their president is not popular. The people _____ like him. (don't or doesn't?)
4. A lot of people _____ television every day. (watch or watches?)
5. Three people _____ injured in the accident. (was or were?)
6. How many people _____ in that house? (live or lives?)
7. _____ the police carry guns in your country? (Do or Does?)
8. The police _____ looking for the stolen car. (is or are?)
9. I need my glasses, but I can't find _____. (it or them?)
10. I'm going to buy _____ new jeans today. (a or some?)

A car, some money (Countable and Uncountable 1)

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

A

Countable nouns

For example: (a) car (a) man (a) key (a) house (a) flower (an) idea (an) accident

You can use **one/two/three (etc.) + countable nouns** (you can count them)



one car



two cars



three men



four houses

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more).

singular a car, the car, my car, etc.

plural cars, the cars, his cars, two cars, some cars, many cars, etc.

- I've got a car.
- New cars are very expensive.
- There aren't many cars in the parking lot.

You can't use the singular (car/house/key, etc.) alone. You need **a/an** (Unit 66).

- We can't get in without a key. (*not* without key)

B

Uncountable nouns

For example: water air rice salt plastic money music tennis



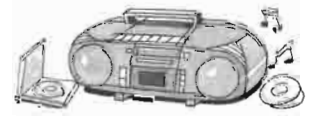
water



salt



money



music

You can't say **one/two/three (etc.) + uncountable nouns** (you can't count them)

~~one water~~ ~~two musics~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form.

money the money my money some money much money, etc.

- I've got some money.
- Money isn't everything.
- There isn't much money in the box.

You can't use **a/an + uncountable nouns**: ~~a~~ money ~~a~~ music

But you can use **a piece of . . . / a glass of . . . , etc. + uncountable nouns**.

a glass of water a carton of milk a bowl of rice a piece of candy
a cup of coffee a bottle of perfume a can of fruit a game of tennis

Exercises

68.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write *a/an* if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket	envelope	salt	spoon	teapot	toothpaste
egg	money	sand	tea	toothbrush	wallet



- | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. It's <u>salt</u> . | 5. It's _____. | 9. It's _____. |
| 2. It's <u>a spoon</u> . | 6. It's _____. | 10. It's _____. |
| 3. It's _____. | 7. It's _____. | 11. It's _____. |
| 4. It's _____. | 8. It's _____. | 12. It's _____. |

68.2 Some of these sentences are right, but some need *a/an*. Write *a/an* if necessary.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. I haven't got watch. <u>a watch</u> | 9. Jamaica is island. _____ |
| 2. Do you like cheese? <u>OK</u> | 10. I don't need key. _____ |
| 3. Beth never wears hat. _____ | 11. Everybody needs food. _____ |
| 4. Are you looking for job? _____ | 12. I've got good idea. _____ |
| 5. Eve doesn't eat meat. _____ | 13. Can you drive car? _____ |
| 6. Eve eats apple every day. _____ | 14. Do you want cup of tea? _____ |
| 7. I'm going to concert tonight. _____ | 15. I don't like tea without milk. _____ |
| 8. It was beautiful day. _____ | 16. Don't go out without coat. _____ |

68.3 What are these things? Write *a... of...* for each picture. Choose from each box.



bottle	carton	jar	+	beans	juice	soup
bowl	cup	piece		coffee	milk	water
can	glass	piece		honey	paper	wood

- | | | |
|----------------------------|----------|----------|
| 1. <u>a carton of milk</u> | 4. _____ | 7. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____ | 8. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 6. _____ | 9. _____ |

A car, some money (Countable and Uncountable 2)

A

a/an and some

A/an + *singular countable nouns* (car/apple/shoe, etc.):

- I need **a** new car.
- Would you like **an** apple?



an apple

Some + *plural countable nouns* (cars/apples/shoes, etc.):

- I need **some** new shoes.
- Would you like **some** apples?



some apples

Some + *uncountable nouns* (water/money/music, etc.):

- I need **some** money.
- Would you like **some** cheese? *or*
- Would you like **a** piece of cheese?



some cheese *or*
a piece of cheese

Compare a and some:

- Nicole bought **a** hat, **some** shoes, and **some** perfume.
- I read **a** newspaper, wrote **some** letters, and listened to **some** music.

B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



a cake



some cakes



some cake *or*
a piece of cake



a chicken



some chickens



some chicken *or*
a piece of chicken

- I'm going to make **a** cake tonight.
- Look! The bakery has **some** nice cakes today.
- Would you like **a** piece of chicken? (*or* . . . some chicken?)

C

Be careful with these nouns – they are usually uncountable:

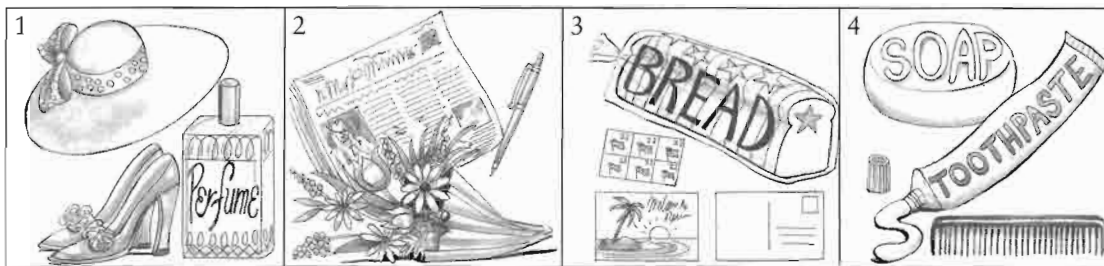
advice information weather news bread hair furniture paper work

- Can I talk to you? I need **some** advice.
- I need **some** information about hotels in Mexico City. (*not* informations)
- We're having nice **weather** this year.
- Listen! I just got **some** good news. (*not* a good news)
- I'm going to buy **some** bread. (*not* a bread)
- Sue has very long **hair**. (*not* hairs)
- They've got **some** very nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* furnitures)
- I need **some** paper / **a** piece of paper. I want to make a list.
- "Do you like your job?" "Yes, but it's hard **work**." (*not* a hard work)

We say **a** job, not "a work."

- I've got a new **job**. (*not* a new work)

69.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures and write sentences (*I bought . . .*).



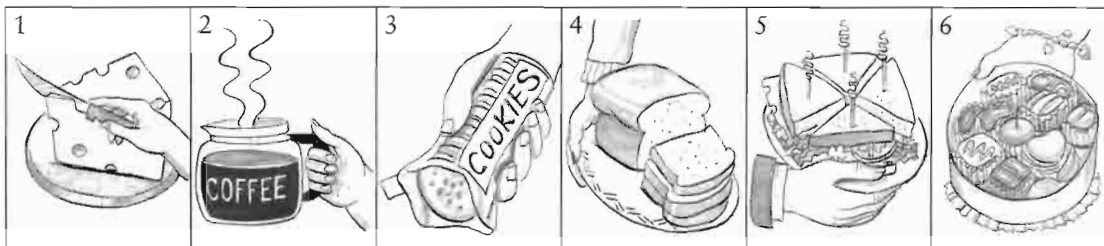
1. *I bought a hat, some shoes, and some perfume.*

2. I bought _____.

3. _____.

4. _____.

69.2 Write sentences with *Would you like a . . . ?* or *Would you like some . . . ?*.



1. *Would you like some cheese?*

4. _____.

2. Would you like _____ ?

5. _____.

3. Would _____ ?

6. _____.

69.3 Write *a/an* or *some*.

1. I read a book and listened to some music.

2. I need _____ money. I want to buy _____ food.

3. We met _____ interesting people at the party.

4. I'm going to open _____ window to get _____ fresh air.

5. Ratana didn't eat much for lunch – only _____ apple and _____ bread.

6. We live in _____ big house. There's _____ nice yard with _____ beautiful trees.

7. I'm going to make a table. First I need _____ wood.

8. Listen to me. I'm going to give you _____ advice.

9. I want to write a letter. I need _____ paper and _____ pen.

69.4 Which is right?

1. I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (*shoes* is right)

2. Mark has brown eye/eyes.

3. Shu Ling has short black hair/hairs.

4. The guidebook had some information/informations about the city.

5. We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.

6. We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.

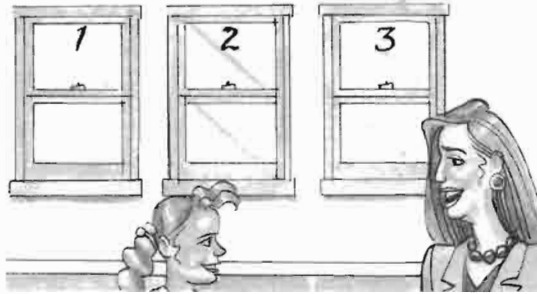
7. It's hard to find a work/job right now.

8. We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on vacation.

A

a/an

Can you open a window?



There are *three* windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I have **a car**. (There are many cars and I have one.)
- Can I ask **a question**? (There are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there **a hotel** near here? (There are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is **an interesting city**. (There are many interesting cities and Paris is one.)
- Lisa is **a student**. (There are many students and Lisa is one.)

the

Can you open the window?



There is only *one* window here –
the window.

- I'm going to wash **the car** tomorrow. (= my car)
- Can you repeat **the question**, please? (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our vacation. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is **the capital of France**. (There is only one capital of France.)
- Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class. (There is only one youngest student.)

Compare a and the:

I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive.
(= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

B

We say **the . . .** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the light, etc. (*of a room*)

the roof / the backyard / the kitchen / the bathroom, etc. (*of a house*)

the airport / the police station / the train station / the mayor's office, etc. (*of a city*)

- "Where's Tom?" "In **the kitchen**."
(= the kitchen of this house or apartment)
- Turn off **the light** and close **the door**.
(= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the airport**?
(= the airport of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please.
(= the manager of this store, etc.)









Exercises

70.1 Write a/an or the.

- We enjoyed our trip. The hotel was very nice.
- "Can I ask a question?" "Sure. What do you want to know?"
- You look very tired. You need _____ vacation.
- "Where's Tom?" "He's in _____ kitchen."
- Tracy is _____ interesting person. You should meet her.
- Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to _____ post office?
- A: Let's go and see _____ movie tonight.
B: OK, that's _____ good idea. What do you want to see?
- It's _____ nice morning. Let's go for _____ walk.
- Amanda is _____ student. When she finishes school, she wants to be _____ journalist. She lives in _____ apartment near _____ college where she is studying. _____ apartment is small, but she likes it.
- Peter and Mary have two children, _____ boy and _____ girl. _____ boy is seven years old, and _____ girl is three. Peter works in _____ factory. Mary doesn't have _____ job right now.

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + one of these words:

airport cup door floor picture radio

<p>1</p>  <p>Can you open <u>the door</u>, please?</p>	<p>2</p>  <p>How far is it to _____ ?</p>	<p>3</p>  <p>Can I have _____ of coffee, please?</p>
<p>4</p>  <p>That's _____ nice - I like it.</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>Can you turn off _____, please?</p>	<p>6</p>  <p>Why are you sitting on _____ ?</p>

70.3 Write a/an or the where necessary.

- Don't forget to turn off light when you go out.
- Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard.
- What is name of this town?
- Canada is very big country.
- What is largest city in Canada?
- I like this room, but I don't like color of ceiling.
- "Are you OK?" "No, I've got headache."
- We live in old house near station.
- What is name of director of movie we saw last night?

turn off the light

A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean.

- What is **the name** of this street? (This street has only one name.)
- Who is **the best player** on your team?
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
- My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget to use **the**.

- Do you live near **the airport**? (*not* near airport)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (*not* where is nearest . . .)

B

the same . . .

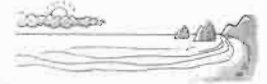
- We live on **the same street**. (*not* on same street)
- "Are these two books different?" "No, they're **the same**." (*not* they're same)

C

We say:

the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the ocean / the country

- The sky is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- Do you live in a city or in **the country**?



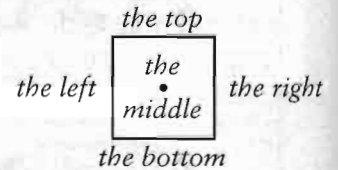
the police

- After the robbery, **the police** asked us a lot of questions.



the top / the end / the middle / the left, etc.

- Write your name at **the top** of the page.
- My house is at **the end** of this block.
- The table is in **the middle** of the room.
- Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?



play **the piano / the guitar / the trumpet**, etc. (musical instruments)

- Paula is learning to play **the piano**.



the radio

- I listen to **the radio** a lot.



D

We do *not* use **the** with:

television/TV

- I watch **television/TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?

but ■ Can you turn off **the TV**? (= the TV set)

breakfast/lunch/dinner

- What did you have for **breakfast**? (*not* the breakfast)
- Dinner is ready!

next/last + week/month/year/summer/Monday, etc.

- I'm not working **next week**. (*not* the next week)
- Did you take a vacation **last summer**? (*not* the last summer)



71.1 Write *the* where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

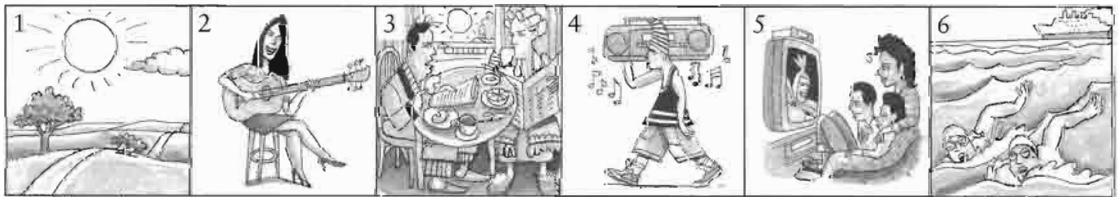
- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. What is name of this street? | <u>the name</u> |
| 2. What's on television tonight? | <u>OK</u> |
| 3. Our apartment is on second floor. | |
| 4. Would you like to go to moon? | |
| 5. What's best hotel in this town? | |
| 6. What time is lunch? | |
| 7. How far is it to football stadium? | |
| 8. We're taking a trip at end of May. | |
| 9. What are you doing next weekend? | |
| 10. I didn't like her first time I met her. | |
| 11. I'm going out after dinner. | |
| 12. What's biggest city in world? | |
| 13. My sister got married last month. | |
| 14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right. | |
| 15. We live in country about five miles from nearest town. | |

71.2 Complete the sentences. Use *the same* + one of these words:

age color problem ~~street~~ time

- I live on Water Street and you live on Water Street. We live on the same street.
- I arrived at 8:30 and you arrived at 8:30. We arrived at _____.
- Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are _____.
- My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are _____.
- I have no money and you have no money. We have _____.

71.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *the* if necessary.



- The sun is shining.
- She's playing _____.
- They're having _____.
- He's listening to _____.
- They're watching _____.
- They're swimming in _____.

71.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

capital ~~dinner~~ police lunch middle name sky television

- We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
- We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember _____.
- _____ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
- I watched three movies on _____ last night.
- _____ stopped me because I was driving too fast.
- Tokyo is _____ of Japan.
- "What did you have for _____?" "A salad."
- I woke up in _____ of the night.

A



She's at work.



They're going to school.



He's in bed.

We say:

(go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work

- Goodbye! I'm going to work now. (*not* to the work)
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) to school, (be) at school, start school, finish school, etc.

- What did you learn at school today? (*not* at the school)
- Some children don't like school.

(go) to college, (be) in college

- Helen wants to go to college when she finishes high school.
- What did you study in college?

(go) to prison/jail, (be) in prison/jail

- Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to church, (be) in/at church

- Dave usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to bed, (be) in bed

- I'm tired. I'm going to bed (*not* to the bed)
- "Where's Kim?" "She's in bed."

(go) home, (be) (at) home, etc.

- I'm tired. I'm going home. (*not* to home)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you staying home? (*or* staying at home)



B

We say:

(go to) the bank / the post office / the hospital / the station / the airport

- "Are you going to the bank?" "No, the post office."
- Brian was in an accident. He had to go to the hospital.
- Does this bus go to the airport?

(go to) the theater / the movies

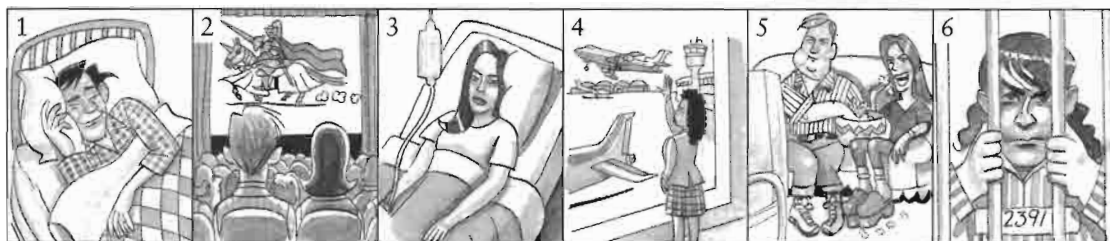
- I never go to the theater, but I go to the movies a lot.

(go to) the doctor, the dentist

- You're sick. Why don't you go to the doctor?
- I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.



72.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need *the*.



1. He's in *bed* . 3. She's in _____ . 5. They're at _____ .
 2. They're at _____ . 4. She's at _____ . 6. He's in _____ .

72.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

~~bank~~ ~~bed~~ ~~church~~ home post office school station

- I need some money. I have to go to *the bank* .
- Dave usually goes to *church* on Sundays.
- In the U.S., children start _____ at the age of five.
- There were a lot of people at _____ waiting for the train.
- I called you last night, but you weren't at _____ .
- I'm going to _____ now. Good night!
- I'm going to _____ to get some stamps.

72.3 Complete the sentences. Use *go*. Sometimes you need *the*.

- If you want to catch a plane, you *go to the airport* .
- If you want to see a movie, you go to _____ .
- If you are tired and you want to sleep, you _____ .
- If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you _____ .
- If you have a problem with your teeth, you _____ .
- If you want to study after you finish high school, you _____ .
- If you are injured in an accident, you _____ .

72.4 Write *the* where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

- We went to movies last night. *to the movies*
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. *OK*
- Yuki wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. _____
- I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. _____
- Why is Angela always late for work? _____
- "Where are your children?" "They're at school." _____
- We have no money in bank. _____
- When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday. _____
- What time do you usually get home from work? _____
- "Where shall we meet?" "At station." _____
- Jim is sick. He's in hospital. _____
- Makoto takes his children to school every day. _____
- Would you like to go to college? _____
- Would you like to go to theater tonight? _____

A



Do not use **the** for general ideas.

- I like **music**, especially **classical music**.
(*not* the music . . . the classical music)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (*not* the meat)
- **Life** is not possible without **water**.
(*not* The life . . . the water)
- I hate **exams**. (*not* the exams)
- Do you know where they sell **foreign newspapers**?
- I'm not very good at writing **letters**.



Do not use **the** for games and sports.

- My favorite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**. (*not* the tennis . . . the skiing)

Do not use **the** for languages or academic subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology**, etc.).

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (*not* the English)
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

B

Flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Flowers are beautiful.
(= flowers in general) ■ I don't like cold weather.
(= cold weather in general) ■ We don't eat fish very often. (= fish in general) ■ Are you interested in history? (= history in general) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ I love your garden!
The flowers are beautiful.
(= the flowers in this garden) ■ The weather isn't very good today. (= the weather today) ■ We had a great meal last night. The fish was excellent.
(= the fish we ate last night) ■ Are you interested in the history of your country? |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



Exercises

73.1 What do you think about these things?

dogs	big cities	fishing	TV quiz shows	exams	parties
museums	tea	basketball	computer games	loud music	hard work

Choose seven things from the box. Write sentences beginning:

I like I don't like I love I hate I don't mind (= it's OK)

1. *I hate exams.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____










73.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ...	I know a lot about ...	I don't know much about ...
I'm not interested in ...	I know a little about ...	I don't know anything about ...

1. (history) *I'm very interested in history.*
2. (politics) I _____
3. (sports) _____
4. (art) _____
5. (astronomy) _____
6. (economics) _____

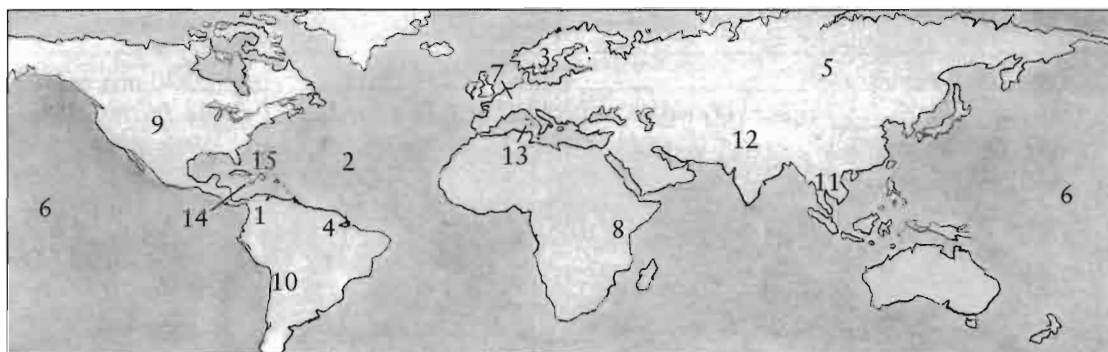
73.3 Which is right?

1. My favorite sport is tennis / ~~the tennis~~. (*tennis* is right)
2. I like this hotel. ~~Rooms~~ / The rooms are very nice. (*The rooms* is right)
3. Everybody needs friends / ~~the friends~~.
4. Tracy doesn't go to parties / ~~the parties~~ very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Stores / ~~The stores~~ were very crowded.
6. "Where's milk / ~~the milk~~?" "It's in the fridge."
7. I don't like milk / ~~the milk~~. I never drink it.
8. "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play football / ~~the football~~."
9. These days a lot of people use computers / ~~the computers~~.
10. We went for a swim. Water / ~~The water~~ was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / ~~the cold water~~.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / ~~the salt~~, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / ~~the people~~ here.
14. Vegetables / ~~The vegetables~~ are good for you.
15. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / ~~the words~~.
16. I enjoy taking pictures / ~~the pictures~~. It's my hobby.
17. Look at pictures / ~~the pictures~~ that I took when I was on vacation.
18. English / ~~The English~~ is used a lot in international business / ~~the international business~~.
19. Money / ~~The money~~ doesn't always bring happiness / ~~the happiness~~.

A	<p>Places (continents, countries, states, islands, cities, etc.)</p> <p>In general we do not use the + names of places.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Bangkok is the capital of Thailand. ■ Easter Island is in the Pacific. ■ Peru is in South America. ■ Quebec is a province of Canada. <p>But we use the in names with republic/states/kingdom.</p> <p>the Dominican Republic the United States of America (the USA) the Czech Republic the United Kingdom (the UK)</p>	 
B	<p>the -s (plural names)</p> <p>We use the + plural names of countries/islands/mountains.</p> <p>the Netherlands the Canary Islands the Philippines the Andes</p>	
C	<p>Oceans, rivers, etc.</p> <p>We use the + names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals.</p> <p>the Pacific (Ocean) the Amazon (River) the Mediterranean (Sea) the Panama Canal</p>	
D	<p>Places in towns (streets, buildings, etc.)</p> <p>In general we do not use the + names of streets, squares, etc.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Kevin lives on Central Avenue. ■ Times Square is in New York. ■ Where is Main Street, please? <p>We do not use the + names + airports/stations/universities/parks, etc.</p> <p>Kennedy Airport McGill University Pennsylvania Station Yosemite (National Park)</p> <p>But we use the + names of universities with of (see Section E).</p> <p>We generally use the with names of hotels, restaurants, theaters, museums, monuments.</p> <p>the Milton (Hotel) the New Broadway (Theater) the Millhouse (Restaurant) the Metropolitan (Museum) the Springfield Cineplex (movie theater) the Lincoln Memorial</p>	  
E	<p>the . . . of . . .</p> <p>We use the + names with of . . .</p> <p>the University of California the Great Wall of China the Bank of Nova Scotia the Tower of London</p>	
F	<p>the north / the south / the east / the west</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ "Which part of Canada did you go to?" "To the west/north." 	

Exercises

74.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use *The* if necessary.



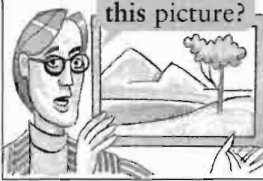

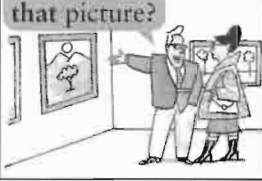



1. Bogota is the capital of Colombia.
2. The Atlantic is between Africa and the Americas.
3. _____ is a country in northern Europe.
4. _____ is a river in South America.
5. _____ is the largest continent in the world.
6. _____ is the largest ocean.
7. _____ is a river in Europe.
8. _____ is a country in East Africa.
9. _____ is between Canada and Mexico.
10. _____ are mountains in South America.
11. _____ is the capital of Thailand.
12. _____ are mountains in Asia.
13. _____ is between Europe and Africa.
14. _____ is an island in the Caribbean.
15. _____ are a group of islands near Florida.

Amazon
Andes
Asia
Atlantic
Bahamas
Bangkok
Bogota
Himalayas
Jamaica
Kenya
Mediterranean
Pacific
Rhine
Sweden
United States

74.2 Write *the* where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write *OK*.

1. Kevin lives on Central Avenue. OK
2. We went to see a play at National Theater. at the National Theater
3. Have you ever been to China? _____
4. Have you ever been to Philippines? _____
5. Can you tell me where Westside Cineplex is? _____
6. Can you tell me where Fifth Street is? _____
7. Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is? _____
8. I'll meet you in front of Washington Monument. _____
9. The sun rises in east and sets in west. _____
10. Europe is bigger than Australia. _____
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? _____
12. We stayed at Park Hotel near Central Park. _____
13. How far is it from Times Square to Penn Station? _____
14. Rocky Mountains are in North America. _____
15. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. _____
16. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. _____
17. I hope to go to United States next year. _____
18. Alan went to University of Michigan. _____

A

<p>this (singular) Do you like this picture?</p> 	<p>these (plural) These flowers are for you.</p> 	<p>that (singular) Do you like that picture?</p> 	<p>those (plural) Who are those people?</p> 
<p>this these</p> 	<p>this picture (= this picture <i>here</i>)</p> <p>these flowers (= these flowers <i>here</i>)</p>	<p>that those</p> 	<p>that picture (= that picture <i>there</i>)</p> <p>those people (= those people <i>there</i>)</p>

B

We use **this/these/that/those** with a *noun* (this picture / these girls, etc.) or without a noun.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ This hotel is expensive, but it's very nice. ■ Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week. ■ "Who's that girl?" "I don't know." ■ Those apples look good. Can I have one? | } | <i>with a noun</i> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ This is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive. ■ "Excuse me, is this your bag?" "Oh yes, thank you." ■ Who's that? (= Who is that person?) ■ Which shoes do you like better – these or those? | } | <i>without a noun</i> |

C

That = something that *has happened*

- "I'm sorry, I forgot to call you." "That's all right."
- **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

That = what somebody *has just said*

- "You're a teacher, aren't you?" "Yes, **that's** right."
- "Mark has a new job." "He does? I didn't know **that**."
- "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, **that's** nice."

D

We use **this is ...** and **is this ...?** on the telephone.

- Hello, **this is** Dave. (= the speaker)
- **Is this** Sarah? (= the other person)






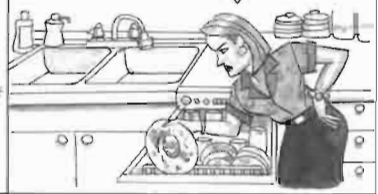
We use **this is ...** to introduce people.

- *Amy*: Brian, **this is** Chris.
- *Brian*: Hi, Chris. Nice to meet you.
- *Chris*: Hi, Brian.





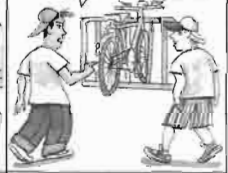







75.1 Complete the sentences. Use *this/these/that/those* + one of these words:

birds dishes house postcards chair shoes

<p>1 Do you like <i>these shoes</i> ?</p> 	<p>2 Who lives in _____ ?</p> 	<p>3 How much are _____ ?</p> 
<p>4 Look at _____ !</p> 	<p>5 Excuse me, is _____ free?</p> 	<p>6 _____ are dirty.</p> 

75.2 Write questions: *Is this/that your ... ?* or *Are these/those your ... ?*

<p>1 <i>Is this your bag?</i></p> 	<p>2 _____</p> 	<p>3 _____</p> 	<p>4 _____</p> 	<p>5 _____</p> 
<p>6 _____</p> 	<p>7 _____</p> 	<p>8 _____</p> 	<p>9 _____</p> 	<p>10 _____</p> 

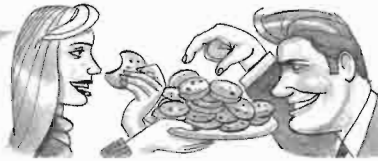
75.3 Complete the sentences with *this is* or *that's* or *that*.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: <i>That's</i> _____ all right.</p> | <p>5. A: Beth plays the piano very well.
B: Really? I didn't know _____ .</p> |
| <p>2. A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
B: Oh, _____ too bad. Why not?</p> | <p>6. (Mark meets Paul's sister Amy.)
Paul: Mark, _____ my sister Amy.</p> |
| <p>3. (on the telephone)
Sue: Hello, Kim. _____ Sue.
Kim: Oh, hi, Sue. How are you?</p> | <p>Mark: Hi, Amy.</p> |
| <p>4. A: You're lazy!
B: _____ not true!</p> | <p>7. A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
B: _____ OK. Forget it!</p> |
| | <p>8. A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you?
B: Yes, _____ right.</p> |

A

one (= a . . .)

These cookies are delicious. Would you like **one**?



Would you like **one**?
= Would you like **a cookie**?

one = a cookie / an apple, etc.

- I need a pen. Do you have **one**? (**one** = a pen)
- A: Is there a **bank** near here?
B: Yes, there's **one** on the corner. (**one** = a bank)

B

one and ones

one (*singular*)



Which **one**? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl, etc.

this one / that one

- Which car is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

the one . . .

- A: Which hotel did you stay at?
B: **The one** near the airport.
- I found this key. Is it **the one** (that) you lost?

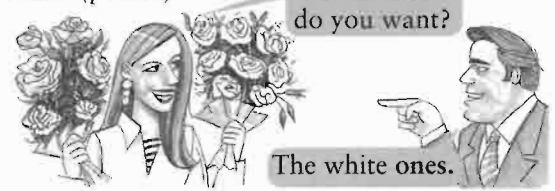
the . . . one

- I don't like the black coat, but I like **the red one**.
- Don't buy that camera. Buy **the other one**.

a/an . . . one

- This cup is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- That cookie was good. I'm going to have **another one**.

ones (*plural*)



Which **ones**? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls, etc.

these/those (*without ones*)

- Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**? (*usually not* these ones or those ones)

the ones . . .

- A: Which books are yours?
B: **The ones** on the table.
- I found these keys. Are they **the ones** (that) you lost?

the . . . ones

- I don't like the black shoes, but I like **the brown ones**.
- Don't buy those apples. Buy **the other ones**.

some . . . ones

- These cups are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- My shoes are old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

Exercises

76.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use *one* (not *a/an* . . .) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car.	B just had a cup of coffee.
There's a drugstore on First Avenue.	B is going to buy a bicycle.
B doesn't have a pen.	B doesn't have an umbrella.

- A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, *I don't have one* _____.
- A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't _____.
- A: Do you have a bicycle? B: No, but _____.
- A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry, but _____.
- A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you. _____.
- A: Is there a drugstore near here? B: Yes, _____.

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use *a/an* . . . *one*. Use the words in the list.

better big ~~clean~~ different new old

- This cup is dirty. Can I have *a clean one* _____?
- I'm going to sell my old car and buy _____.
- That's not a very good photograph. This is _____.
- I want today's newspaper. This is _____.
- This box is too small. I need _____.
- Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to _____.

76.3 Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use *one/ones*.

The coat is black.	I took the photos at the beach last week.
The girl is tall with long hair.	The shoes are brown.
The hotel is near the airport.	The picture is on the wall.
The house has a red door.	The books are on the top shelf.
The flowers are yellow.	The man has a mustache and glasses.

- A: We stayed at a hotel.
B: *Which one* _____?
A: *The one near the airport.* _____
- A: Those shoes are nice.
B: Which _____?
A: The _____ ones.
- A: That's a nice house.
B: _____?
A: _____ with _____.
- A: I like that coat.
B: _____?
A: _____.
- A: I like that picture.
B: _____?
A: _____.
- A: Are those your books?
B: _____?
A: _____.
- A: Do you know that girl?
B: _____?
A: _____.
- A: Those flowers are beautiful.
B: _____?
A: _____.
- A: Who's that man?
B: _____?
A: _____.
- A: Have you seen my photos yet?
B: _____?
A: _____.

A

some



Use **some** in *positive* sentences.

- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- We made **some** mistakes.

any



Use **any** in *negative* sentences.

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't any** orange juice in the fridge.
- We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

B

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not some*).

- Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- Does he have **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we *offer* things (Would you like . . . ?)

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
- B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask for* things (Can I have . . . ?, etc.).

- A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
- B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me **some** money?
- B: Sure. How much do you need?

Do you have any money?



Would you like some coffee?



C

some and any without a *noun*

- I didn't take any pictures, but Amy took **some**. (= some pictures)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have **any**." (= any luggage)
- "Are there any cookies?" "Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen." (= some cookies)

D

something/somebody (*or someone*)

- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (*or someone*).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- **Somebody's** at the door.

anything/anybody (*or anyone*)

- She **didn't** say **anything**.
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (*or anyone*).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Amy? Has **anybody** seen her?

77.1 Write *some* or *any*.

- I bought *some* _____ cheese, but I didn't buy *any* _____ bread.
- I'm going to the post office. I need _____ stamps.
- There aren't _____ gas stations in this part of town.
- Eric and Alice don't have _____ children.
- Have you got _____ brothers or sisters?
- There are _____ beautiful flowers in the park.
- Do you know _____ good hotels in Miami?
- "Would you like _____ coffee?" "Yes, please."
- When we were on vacation, we visited _____ very interesting places.
- Don't buy _____ rice. We don't need _____.
- I went out to buy _____ oranges, but they didn't have _____ at the store.
- I'm thirsty. Can I have _____ water, please?

77.2 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any* + one of these words:

air	friends	help	letters	pictures
batteries	fruit	languages	milk	shampoo

- I want to wash my hair. Is there *any shampoo* _____ ?
- This evening I'm going to write _____.
- I don't have my camera, so I can't take _____.
- Do you speak _____ foreign _____ ?
- Last night I went to a restaurant with _____ of mine.
- Can I have _____ in my coffee, please?
- That clock isn't working. There aren't _____ in it.
- It's hot in this office. I'm going out for _____ fresh _____.
- "Would you like _____ ?" "No, thank you. I'm not hungry right now."
- I can do this job alone. I don't need _____.

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any*.

- Min Fang didn't take any pictures, but *I took some* _____. (I / take)
- "Where's your luggage?" "*I don't have any* _____." (I / not / have)
- "Do you need any money?" "No, thank you. _____." (I / have)
- "Can I borrow some money?" "Sorry, _____." (I / not / have)
- The tomatoes weren't very good, so _____. (I / not / buy)
- There were some nice oranges at the store, so _____. (I / buy)

77.4 Write *something*/*somebody*/*anything*/*anybody*.

- Luis said *something* _____ to me, but I didn't understand it.
- "What's wrong?" "There's _____ in my eye."
- Do you know _____ about politics?
- I went to the store, but I didn't buy _____.
- _____ broke the window. I don't know who.
- There isn't _____ in the bag. It's empty.
- I'm looking for my keys. Has _____ seen them?
- Would you like _____ to drink?
- I didn't eat _____ because I wasn't hungry.
- This is a secret. Please don't tell _____.

A



The parking lot is empty.

There aren't any cars } in the parking lot.
There are no cars }

How many cars are there in the parking lot?

None.

not (-n't) + any

- There aren't any cars in the parking lot.
- Karen and Steve don't have any children.
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garage, etc.)

no . . . = not + any or not + a

- There are no cars in the parking lot. (= there aren't any cars)
- We have no coffee. (= we don't have any coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's no garage. (= there isn't a garage)

We use no . . . especially after have/has and there is/are.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no

- They don't have any children. or They have no children.
(not They don't have no children)
- There isn't any sugar in your coffee. or There's no sugar in your coffee.

B

Compare no and none:

Use no + noun (no money / no children, etc.).

- We have no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun).

- "How much money do you have?" "None." (= no money)
- "Were there any problems?" "No, none." (= no problems)

C

none and no one

none = 0 (zero)

no one = nobody

None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people).

- "How much money do you have?" "None." (= no money)
- "How many people did you meet?" "None." (= no people)

No one is an answer for Who?.

- "Who did you meet?" "No one." or "Nobody."

78.1 Write these sentences again with *no*.

1. We don't have any money. We have no money.
2. There aren't any stores near here. There are _____.
3. Carol doesn't have any free time. _____
4. There isn't a light in this room. _____

Write these sentences again with *any*.

5. We have no money. We don't have any money.
6. There's no gas in the car. _____
7. There are no buses today. _____
8. Marcos has no brothers or sisters. _____

78.2 Write *no* or *any*.

1. There's no sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he doesn't have _____ children.
3. Sue doesn't speak _____ foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's _____ coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. "Look at those birds!" "Birds? Where? I can't see _____ birds."
6. "Do you know where Jessica is?" "No, I have _____ idea."

Write *no*, *any*, or *none*.

7. There aren't _____ pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was _____ wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have _____ at the store.
10. Everything was correct. There were _____ mistakes.
11. "How much luggage have you got?" "_____."
12. "How much luggage have you got?" "I haven't got _____."

78.3 Complete the sentences. Use *any* or *no* + one of these words:

air conditioning	difference	friends	money	problems
answer	film	furniture	photographs	questions

1. Everything was OK. There were no problems.
2. They want to take a vacation, but they have _____.
3. I'm not going to answer _____.
4. He's always alone. He has _____.
5. There is _____ between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't _____ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to call you yesterday, but there was _____.
8. The house is hot because there isn't _____.
9. I can't take _____. There's _____ in the camera.

78.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use *None* where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? Two. OR A lot. OR None.
2. How many sisters do you have? _____
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday? _____
4. How many pictures have you taken today? _____
5. How many legs does a snake have? _____

A

not + anybody / anyone
nobody / no one
(for people)



There isn't { anybody / anyone } in the room.

There is { nobody / no one } in the room.

A: Who is in the room?

B: Nobody. / No one.

-body and -one are the same:
anybody = anyone nobody = no one

not + anything
nothing
(for things)



There isn't anything in the bag.

There is nothing in the bag.

A: What's in the bag?

B: Nothing.

B

not + anybody/anyone
■ I don't know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybody

no one = not + anyone

■ I'm lonely. I have nobody to talk to.
(= I don't have anybody.)

■ The house is empty. There is no one in it.
(= There isn't anyone in it.)

not + anything
■ I can't remember anything.

nothing = not + anything
■ She said nothing.
(= She didn't say anything.)
■ There's nothing to eat.
(= There isn't anything to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody / no one / nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question).

■ The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.
(not Anybody lives there)

■ "Who did you speak to?" "No one."

■ **Nothing** happened.
(not Anything happened)

■ "What did you say?" "Nothing."

D

Remember: *negative verb* + anybody/anyone/anything
positive verb + nobody/no one/nothing

- He **doesn't** know anything. (not he doesn't know nothing)
- **Don't** tell anybody. (not don't tell nobody)
- There is **nothing** to do in this town. (not there isn't nothing)

79.1 Write these sentences again with *nobody / no one* or *nothing*.

1. There isn't anything in the bag. *There's nothing in the bag*
2. There isn't anybody in the office. There's _____.
3. I don't have anything to do. I _____.
4. There isn't anything on TV. _____.
5. There wasn't anyone at home. _____.
6. We didn't find anything. _____.

79.2 Write these sentences again with *anybody/anyone* or *anything*.

1. There's nothing in the bag. *There isn't anything in the bag*
2. There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't _____.
3. I have nothing to read. _____.
4. I have no one to help me. _____.
5. Sarai heard nothing. _____.
6. We have nothing for dinner. _____.

79.3 Answer these questions with *nobody / no one* or *nothing*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1a. What did you say? <i>Nothing</i> | 5a. Who knows the answer? _____ |
| 2a. Who saw you? <i>Nobody</i> | 6a. What did you buy? _____ |
| 3a. What do you want? _____ | 7a. What happened? _____ |
| 4a. Who did you meet? _____ | 8a. Who was late? _____ |

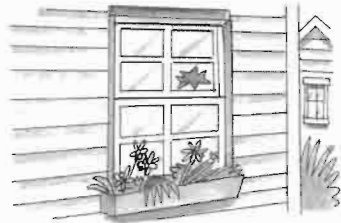
Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use *nobody / no one / nothing* or *anybody / anyone / anything*.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1b. <i>I didn't say anything</i> | 5b. _____ the answer. |
| 2b. <i>Nobody saw me</i> | 6b. _____ |
| 3b. I don't _____ | 7b. _____ |
| 4b. I _____ | 8b. _____ |

79.4 Complete the sentences. Use *nobody / no one / nothing / anybody / anyone / anything*.

1. That house is empty. *Nobody* lives there.
2. Brian has a bad memory. He can't remember *anything*.
3. Be quiet! Don't say _____.
4. I didn't know about the meeting. _____ told me.
5. "What did you have to eat?" "_____. I wasn't hungry."
6. I didn't eat _____. I wasn't hungry.
7. Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn't with _____.
8. I'm sorry I can't help you. There's _____ I can do.
9. I don't know _____ about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn't cost _____ to go in.
11. I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was _____ there.
12. Antonio spoke very fast. I didn't understand _____.
13. "What are you doing tonight?" "_____. Why?"
14. Helen is out of town. _____ knows where she is. She didn't tell _____ where she was going.

A



Somebody (or someone) has broken the window.

somebody/someone = a person, but we don't know who



She has something in her mouth.

something = a thing, but we don't know what



Tom lives somewhere near Toronto.

somewhere = in/to a place, but we don't know where

B

People (-body or -one)

somebody or someone
anybody or anyone
nobody or no one

- There is **somebody** (or **someone**) at the door.
- Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door?
- There isn't **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door.
- There is **nobody** (or **no one**) at the door.

-body and -one are the same: somebody = someone, nobody = no one, etc.

Things (-thing)

something
anything
nothing

- Holly said **something**, but I didn't understand her.
- Are you doing **anything** this weekend?
- I was angry, but I **didn't** say **anything**.
- "What did you say?" "Nothing."

Places (-where)

somewhere
anywhere
nowhere

- Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in Southern California.
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting on vacation?
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

C

something/anybody, etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting, etc.)

- Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere new**.
- "What's in that letter?" "It's **nothing important**."

D

something/anybody, etc. + to . . .

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk to**. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= no place where people can go)

80.1 Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. | Holly said <u>something</u> . | What did she say? |
| 2. | I lost _____ this morning. | What did you lose? |
| 3. | Sue and Tom have gone _____. | Where have they gone? |
| 4. | I'm going to call _____. | Who are you going to call? |

80.2 Write nobody (or no one) / nothing / nowhere.

- | | | |
|-----|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1a. | What did you say? | <u>Nothing.</u> |
| 2a. | Where are you going? | _____ |
| 3a. | What do you want? | _____ |
| 4a. | Who are you looking for? | _____ |

Answer the same questions with full sentences. Use *not + anybody/anything/anywhere*.

- | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|-----|-------|
| 1b. | <u>I didn't say anything.</u> | 3b. | _____ |
| 2b. | I'm not _____. | 4b. | _____ |

80.3 Write somebody/anything/nowhere, etc.

- It's dark. I can't see anything.
- Jay lives somewhere near Toronto.
- Do you know _____ about computers?
- "Listen!" "What? I can't hear _____."
- "What are you doing here?" "I'm waiting for _____."
- We need to talk. There's _____ I want to tell you.
- "Did _____ see the accident?" "No, _____."
- We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat _____.
- "What's going to happen?" "I don't know. _____ knows."
- "Do you know _____ in Tokyo?" "Yes, a few people."
- "What's in that suitcase?" "_____. It's empty."
- I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them _____.
- I don't like cold weather. I want to live _____ warm.
- Is there _____ interesting on TV tonight?
- Have you ever met _____ famous?

80.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

You can use these words more than once:

Use these words once:

something	anything	nothing
somewhere	anywhere	nowhere

do	eat	play	sit
drink	go	read	stay

- We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go.
- There isn't any food in the house. We don't have _____.
- I'm bored. I have _____.
- "Why are you standing?" "Because there isn't _____."
- "Would you like _____?" "Yes, please – a glass of water."
- All the hotels were full. There was _____.
- I want _____. I'm going to buy a magazine.
- We're going to buy a house with a yard. Our boys need _____.

A

every



Every house on the street is the same.

every house on the street =
all the houses on the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (every house / every country, etc.).

- Alice has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we take a vacation at the beach.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every**.

- **Every house** on the street is the same. (*not are the same*)

Compare **every** and **all**:

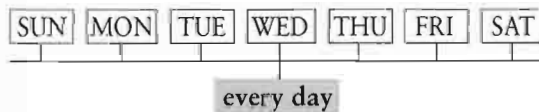
- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Every student in the class passed the exam. ■ Every country has a national flag. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ All the students in the class passed the exam. ■ All countries have a national flag. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

B

every day and all day

every day = on all days

how often?

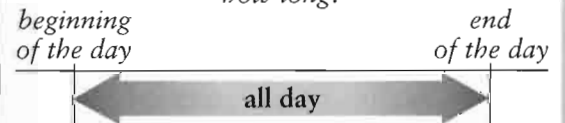


- It rained **every day** last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)

Also: every morning/night/summer, etc.

all day = the complete day

how long?



- Yesterday it rained **all day**.
- On Monday, I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)

Also: all morning/night/summer, etc.

C

everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or everyone
(people)
everything
(things)
everywhere
(places)

- **Everybody** (*or Everyone*) needs friends.
(= all people need friends)
- Have you got **everything** you need?
(= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it.
(= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**.

- **Everybody** has problems. (*not everybody have*)

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + one of these words:

day room ~~student~~ time word

1. *Every student* _____ in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. _____ is the same.
3. Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins _____.
4. _____ in the hotel has a color TV.
5. "Did you understand what she said?" "Most of it but not _____."

81.2 Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

1. Yesterday it rained *all day* _____.
2. I buy a newspaper _____, but sometimes I don't read it.
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home _____.
4. I drink about four cups of coffee _____.
5. Paula was sick yesterday, so she stayed in bed _____.
6. Last year we went to the beach for a week, and it rained _____.
7. I'm tired because I've been working hard _____.

81.3 Write every or all.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours *every* _____ evening.
2. Barbara gets up at 6:30 _____ morning.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside _____ afternoon.
4. I'm leaving town on Monday. I'll be away _____ week.
5. "How often do you go skiing?" "_____ year. Usually in March."
6. A: Were you at home at 10 A.M. yesterday?
B: Yes, I was home _____ morning. I went out after lunch.
7. My sister likes new cars. She buys one _____ year.
8. I saw Brian at the party, but he didn't speak to me _____ evening.
9. We take a vacation for two or three weeks _____ summer.

81.4 Write everybody/everything/everywhere.

1. *Everybody* _____ needs friends.
2. Chris knows _____ about computers.
3. I like the people here. _____ is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and _____ is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes _____ on his motorcycle.
6. Let's have dinner. _____ is hungry.
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books _____.
8. You're right. _____ you say is true.

81.5 Write a verb (one word).

1. Everybody *has* _____ problems.
2. Are you ready yet? Everybody _____ waiting for you.
3. Eric is very popular. Everyone _____ him.
4. This town is completely different. Everything _____ changed.
5. I got home very late. I came in quietly because everyone _____ asleep.
6. Everybody _____ mistakes!

A

Compare:

children/money/books, etc. (in general)

- Children like to play.
(= children in general)
- Money isn't everything.
(= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

the children / the money / these books, etc.

- Where are **the children**?
(= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I haven't got **the money**. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read **these books**?
- I often go out with **my friends**.

B

most / most of / some / some of, etc.



all



most



some



any



no / none / not + any

most/some, etc. + noun

all	of	cities
most		children
some		books
any		money
no		

- Most children like to play.
(= children in general)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He has no friends.
- All cities have the same problems.
(= cities in general)

Do not use of in these sentences:

- Most people drive too fast.
(not most of people)
- Some birds can't fly. (not some of birds)

most of / some of, etc. + the/this/my, etc.

all	(of)	the
most	of	this/that
some		these/those
any		my/your, etc.
none		

- Most of the children in this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends can ski.

But we say all the . . . / all my . . . , etc. (with or without of).

- All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students . . .)
- Silvia has lived in Miami all her life. (or . . . all of her life.)

C

all of it / most of them / none of us, etc.

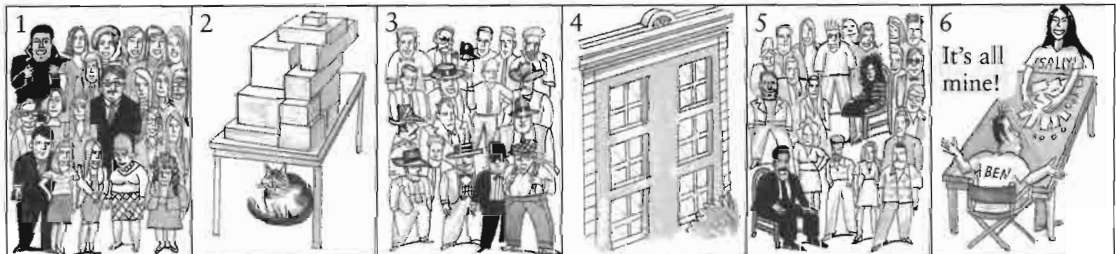
all	of	it
most		them
some		us
any		you
none		

- We can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I have a lot of history books, but I haven't read any of them.
- "How many of these books have you read?" "None of them."

82.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses (*some/most, etc.*). Sometimes you need *of* (*some of / most of, etc.*).

1. Most children like to play. (most)
2. Some of this money is yours. (some)
3. _____ people never stop talking. (some)
4. _____ the stores downtown close at 6:00. (most)
5. You can change your money in _____ banks. (some)
6. I don't like _____ the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He's lost _____ his money. (all)
8. _____ my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know _____ the people in this photograph? (any)
10. _____ birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed _____ the film, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. _____ sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. _____ the hotels are full. (all)
14. Try _____ this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on vacation. It rained _____ the time. (most)

82.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use *all/most/some/none + of them / of it*.



1. How many of the people are women?
2. How many of the boxes are on the table?
3. How many of the men are wearing hats?
4. How many of the windows are open?
5. How many of the people are standing?
6. How much of the money is Ben's?

Most of them.

82.3 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

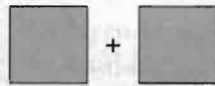
1. Most of children like to play.
2. All the students failed the exam.
3. Some of people work too hard.
4. Some of questions on the exam were very easy.
5. I haven't seen any of those people before.
6. All of insects have six legs.
7. Have you read all these books?
8. Most of students in our class are very nice.
9. Most of my friends are going to the party.
10. I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.

Most children

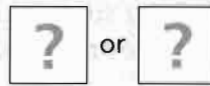
OK

A

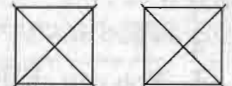
We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people.



both



either



neither (not + either)

- Rosemary has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the movies or the theater?
B: **Neither**. I want to stay home. (**neither** = not the movies *or* the theater)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

- "Would you like tea or coffee?" { "Either. It doesn't matter." (= tea or coffee)
"I don't want either." (*not* I don't want neither)
"Neither." (= not tea *or* coffee)

B

Both/either/neither + *noun*

both	+ plural	both	windows/books/children, etc.
either	} + singular	either	window/book/child, etc.
neither		neither	

- Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked **both** cities very much.
- First I worked in an office, and then in a store. **Neither** job was very interesting.
- There are two ways to get to the airport. You can go **either** way.

C

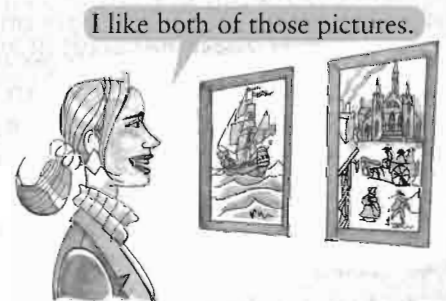
both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...

both	of	the
either		these/those
neither		my/your/Amy's, etc.

- **Neither** of my parents is Canadian.
- I haven't read **either** of these books.

You can say **both** (of) the ... / **both** (of) those ... / **both** (of) my ... , etc. (with or without of).

- I like **both** of those pictures. *or* I like **both** those pictures.
- **Both** of Amy's sisters are married. *or* **Both** Amy's sisters are married.



D

both of them / neither of us, etc.

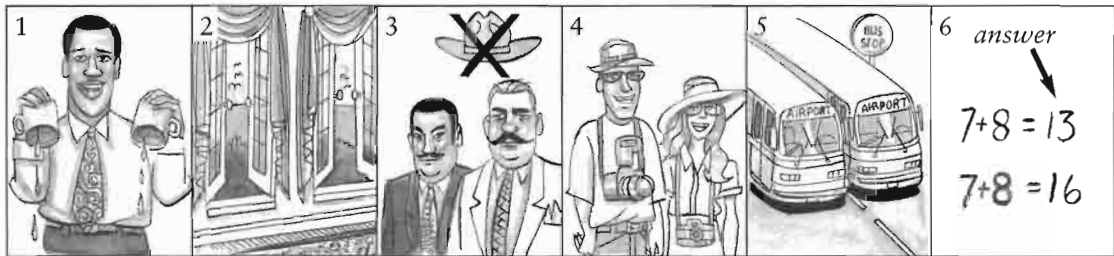
both	of	them
either		us
neither		you

- Tiffany has two sisters. **Both** of them are married.
- Tom and I didn't eat anything. **Neither** of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know **either** of them.

83.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.



1. Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked both _____ cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of _____ them.
3. It was a good football game. _____ teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football game. _____ team played well.
5. "Is your friend Canadian or American?" "_____. She's Australian."
6. We went away for two days, but the weather was bad. It rained _____ days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
B: _____. It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Diana and Mike to the party, but _____ them came.
9. "Do you go to work by car or by bus?" "_____. I always walk."
10. "Which hat do you like, this one or that one?" "I don't like _____ them."
11. "Do you work, or are you a student?" "_____. I work and I'm a student, too."
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because _____ us had a watch.
13. Lee has two sisters and a brother. _____ sisters are married.
14. Lee has two sisters and a brother. I know her brother, but I haven't met _____ her sisters.

83.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... or Neither ...



1. Both cups are _____ empty.
2. _____ are open.
3. _____ wearing a hat.
4. _____ cameras.
5. _____ to the airport.
6. _____ right.

83.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both of them / Neither of them ...

		
Are you married?	No	No
How old are you?	21	21
Are you a student?	Yes	Yes
Do you have a car?	No	No
Where do you live?	Boston	Boston
Do you like to cook?	Yes	Yes
Can you play the piano?	No	No
Do you read the newspaper?	Yes	Yes
Are you interested in sports?	No	No

1. Neither of them is married.
2. Both of them are 21.
3. _____ students.
4. _____ a car.
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

A



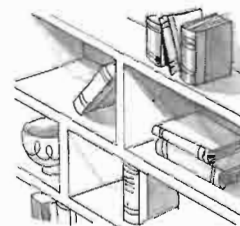
a lot of money



not much money



a lot of books



not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun* (much food / much money, etc.).

- Did you buy **much** food?
- We don't have **much** luggage.
- How **much** money do you want?
- A: Have you got any **money**?
B: I've got some but **not much**.

We use **many** + *plural noun* (many books / many people, etc.).

- Did you buy **many** books?
- We don't know **many** people.
- How **many** pictures did you take?
- A: Did you take any **pictures**?
B: I took some but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + both kinds of noun.

- We bought **a lot of** food.
- Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free time.

Note that we say:

- There is **a lot of** food/money/water. (*singular verb*)

- We bought **a lot of** books.
- Did they ask you **a lot of** questions?

- There **are** **a lot of** trees/stores/people. (*plural verb*)

- **A lot of** people like soccer. (*not likes*)

B

We use **much** in *questions* and *negative sentences*.

- Do you drink **much** coffee?
- I **don't** drink **much** coffee.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*.

- I drink **a lot of** coffee. (*not* I drink much coffee)
- "Do you drink much coffee?" "Yes, **a lot**." (*not* Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences (question/positive/negative).

- Do you **have many** friends / **a lot of** friends?
- We **have many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- We **don't have many** friends / **a lot of** friends.

C

much and **a lot** without a noun

- Diane spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**.
- "Do you watch TV **much**?" "No, **not much**." (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the movies **a lot**. (*not much* – see section B)
- I don't like him very **much**.

Exercises

84.1 Write *much* or *many*.

1. Did you buy much food?
2. There aren't _____ hotels in this town.
3. We don't have _____ gas.
4. Were there _____ people on the train?
5. Did _____ students fail the exam?
6. Paula doesn't have _____ money.
7. I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat _____.
8. I haven't seen Eric for _____ years.

Write *How much* or *How many*.

9. _____ people are coming to the party?
10. _____ milk should I get at the store?
11. _____ bread did you buy?
12. _____ players are there on a football team?

84.2 Complete the sentences. Use *much* or *many* with one of these words:

~~books~~ countries luggage people time times

1. I don't read very much. I don't have many books.
2. Hurry up! We don't have _____.
3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to _____?
4. Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know _____.
5. "Do you have _____?" "No, only this suitcase."
6. I know Tokyo very well. I've been there _____.

84.3 Complete the sentences with *a lot of* + one of these:

accidents ~~books~~ fun interesting things traffic

1. I like to read. I have a lot of books.
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw _____.
3. This road is very dangerous. There are _____ here.
4. We enjoyed our vacation. We had _____.
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was _____.

84.4 In some of these sentences, *much* is not natural. Change the sentences or write *OK*.

1. Do you drink much coffee? OK
2. I drink much tea. a lot of tea
3. It was a cold winter. We had much snow. _____
4. There wasn't much snow last winter. _____
5. It costs much money to travel around the world. _____
6. This pen was cheap. It didn't cost much. _____
7. Do you know much about computers? _____
8. "Do you have any luggage?" "Yes, much." _____

84.5 Write sentences about these people. Use *much* and *a lot*.

1. Jim loves movies. (go to the movies) He goes to the movies a lot.
2. Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) She doesn't watch TV much.
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She _____.
4. Mark doesn't like to drive. (use his car) He _____.
5. Paul spends most of his time at home. (go out) _____.
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel) _____.

A

(a) little + *uncountable noun*

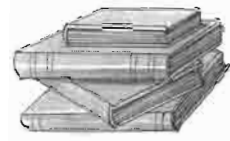
- (a) little water
- (a) little money
- (a) little time
- (a) little soup



a little water

(a) few + *plural noun*

- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days



a few books

B

a little = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank a little water.
- I speak a little Spanish.
(= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?
B: A little.

a few = some but not many

- Last night I wrote a few letters.
- We're going away for a few days.
- I speak a few words of Spanish.
- A: Do you have any stamps?
B: A few. Do you want one?

C

✗ little (without a) = almost no or almost nothing

- There was little food in the fridge.
It was almost empty.

You can say very little.

- Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= almost nothing)

✗ few (without a) = almost no

- There were few people in the theater.
It was almost empty.

You can say very few.

- Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.

D

little and a little

A little is a *positive* idea.

- They have a little money, but they're not rich. (= they have some money)

Little (or very little) is a *negative* idea.

- They are very poor. They have (very) little money. (= almost no money)

I have a little money.

I have little money.



few and a few

A few is a *positive* idea.

- I have a few friends, so I'm not lonely.
(= I have some friends)

Few (or very few) is a *negative* idea.

- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have (very) few friends. (= almost no friends)

I have a few friends.

I have few friends.



85.1 Answer the questions with a *little* or a *few*.

1. "Do you have any money?" "Yes, a little ."
2. "Do you have any envelopes?" "Yes, _____ ."
3. "Do you want sugar in your coffee?" "Yes, _____ , please."
4. "Did you take any pictures when you were on vacation?" "Yes, _____ ."
5. "Does your friend speak English?" "Yes, _____ ."
6. "Are there any good restaurants in this town?" "Yes, _____ ."

85.2 Write a *little* or a *few* + one of these words:

chairs days fresh air friends letters milk Russian times

1. Last night I wrote a few letters to my family and friends.
2. Can I have _____ in my coffee, please?
3. "When did Julia leave?" " _____ ago."
4. "Do you speak any foreign languages?" "I can speak _____ ."
5. "Are you going to the movies alone?" "No, I'm going with _____ ."
6. "Have you ever been to Mexico?" "Yes, _____ ."
7. There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and _____ .
8. I'm going out for a walk. I need _____ .

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use *very little* or *very few* + one of these words:

coffee hotels ~~mistakes~~ people rain time work

1. Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes .
2. I drink _____ . I don't like it much.
3. The weather here is very dry in the summer. There is _____ .
4. It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are _____ .
5. Hurry up. There's _____ before the movie starts.
6. The town is very quiet at night. _____ go out.
7. Some people in my office are very lazy. They do _____ .

85.4 Write *very little* / a *little* / *very few* / a *few*.

1. There was very little food in the fridge. It was almost empty.
2. "When did Sarah go out?" " _____ minutes ago."
3. I can't decide now. I need _____ time to think about it.
4. There was _____ traffic, so we got there early.
5. Let's take a taxi. There are _____ buses after 9 o'clock at night.
6. "Would you like more soup?" "Yes, _____ , please."
7. They sent us a map, so we had _____ trouble finding their house.

85.5 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1. We're going away for few days next week. for a few days
2. Everybody needs little luck. _____
3. I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do. _____
4. I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. _____
5. Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? _____
6. There were little people on the bus – it was almost empty. _____

A

Adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes, etc.)

adjective + noun

It's a nice day today.
 Laura has brown eyes.
 There's a very old church in this town.
 Do you like Italian food?
 I don't speak any foreign languages.
 There are some beautiful yellow flowers in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun.

- They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same.

- a **different place** **different places** (*not* different)

B

be (am/is/was, etc.) + adjective

- The weather is **nice** today.
- These flowers **are** very **beautiful**.
- **Are** you cold? Should I close the window?
- I'm **hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The movie **wasn't** very good. It was boring.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm studying.



C

look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective



- "You look tired." "Yes, I feel tired."
- Eric told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

He	is	feels	tired.	They	are	look	happy.	It	is	smells	good.
		looks				sound				tastes	

Exercises

86.1 Put the words in the right order.

- (new / live in / house / they / a) They live in a new house
- (like / jacket / I / that / green) I _____.
- (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do _____?
- (had / wonderful / a / I / trip) _____.
- (went to / restaurant / a / Chinese / we) _____.

86.2 The words in the box are adjectives (dark, foreign, etc.) or nouns (air, job, etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	dangerous	foreign	hot	knife	long	vacation
clouds	dark	fresh	job	languages	sharp	water







- Do you speak any foreign languages _____?
- Look at those _____ . It's going to rain.
- Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a _____ .
- You need _____ to make tea.
- Can you open the window? We need some _____ .
- I need a _____ to cut these onions.
- Fire fighting is a _____ .

86.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s)	look(s)	sound(s)
look(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)

+

happy	nice	surprised
new	sick	terrible

1  You <u>sound happy</u> .	2  It _____.	3  I _____.
4  You _____.	5  They _____.	6  It _____.

86.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use the word in parentheses ().

A

- You look tired.
- This is a new coat.
- I'm American.
- You look cold.
- These bags are heavy.
- The soup looks good.

B

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| I do? I <u>don't feel tired</u> | (feel) |
| Really? It _____ | (look) |
| You are? You _____ | (sound) |
| Really? I _____ | (feel) |
| They are? They _____ | (look) |
| Really? It _____ | (taste) |

A



He ate his dinner very **quickly**.
Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.



Suddenly, the shelf fell down.

Adjective + -ly → adverb

adjective	quick	bad	sudden	careful	heavy	etc.
adverb	quickly	badly	suddenly	carefully	heavily	etc.

Spelling (see Appendix 5.2): easy → easily heavy → heavily

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something.

- The train stopped **suddenly**.
- I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- Please listen **carefully**.
- I understand you **perfectly**.



It's raining **heavily**.

Compare:

adjective (see Unit 86)

- Sue is very **quiet**.
- **Be careful!**
- It was a **bad** game.
- I felt **nervous**. (= I was nervous)

adverb

- Sue speaks very **quietly**. (*not* speaks very quiet)
- **Listen carefully!** (*not* listen careful)
- Our team played **badly**. (*not* played bad)
- I waited **nervously**.

C

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs: **hard fast late early**

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| ■ Sue's job is very hard . | ■ Sue works very hard . (<i>not</i> hardly) |
| ■ Ben is a fast runner. | ■ Ben can run fast . |
| ■ The bus was late/early . | ■ I went to bed late/early . |

D

good (adjective) → **well** (adverb)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ■ Your English is very good . | ■ You speak English very well . (<i>not</i> very good) |
| ■ It was a good game. | ■ Our team played well . |

But **well** is also an adjective (= not sick, in good health).

- "How are you?" "I'm very **well**, thank you. And you?"

87.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:

angrily badly early fast heavily quietly



1. It's raining heavily .
2. He sings very _____ .
3. They came in _____ .
4. She shouted at me _____ .
5. She can run very _____ .
6. He got to work _____ .

87.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come	know	sleep	win
explain	listen	think	work

carefully	clearly	hard	well
carefully	easily	quickly	well

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please listen carefully .
2. Amy! _____ ! Run!
3. They _____ . At the end of the day, they're always tired.
4. I'm tired this morning. I didn't _____ last night.
5. You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always _____ .
6. _____ before you answer this question.
7. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't _____ her very _____ .
8. Our teacher doesn't _____ things very _____ . We never understand him.

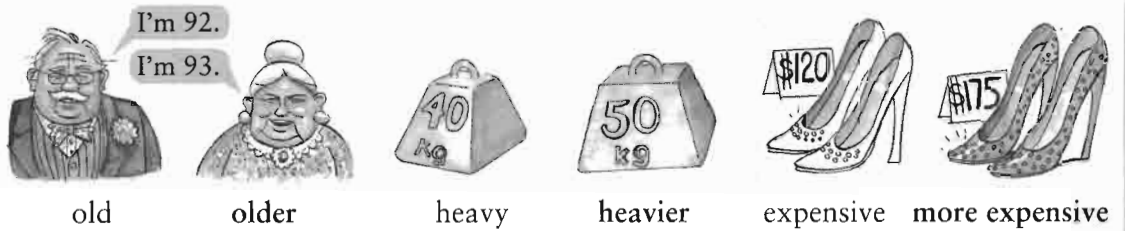
87.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so quick/quickly. It's not good for you. (*quickly* is right)
2. Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
6. Tracy is studying hard/hardly for her exams.
7. "Where's Diane?" "She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly."
8. Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10. That jacket looks nice/nicely. Are you going to buy it?

87.4 Write good or well.

1. Your English is really good . You speak it very well .
2. Jackie did very _____ on her exams.
3. The food was very _____ . I enjoyed it a lot.
4. Mark has a difficult job, but he does it _____ .
5. How are your parents? Are they _____ ?
6. Did you have a _____ vacation? Was the weather _____ ?

A



Older / heavier / more expensive are *comparative* forms.
The comparative is -er (older) or more . . . (more expensive).

B

-er (older, heavier, etc.)

Short words (1 syllable) → -er

old → older slow → slower cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer late → later big → bigger

Spelling (see Appendix 5): big → bigger hot → hotter thin → thinner

Words ending in -y → -ier

easy → easier heavy → heavier early → earlier

- Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not* more old)
 - Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
 - Helen wants a **bigger** car.
 - This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
 - Don't write a letter. It's **easier** to call. (*not* more easy)
- far → farther
- "How **far** is it to the station? A mile?" "No, it's **farther**. About two miles."

C

more . . .

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → more . . .

careful → **more** careful polite → **more** polite
expensive → **more** expensive interesting → **more** interesting

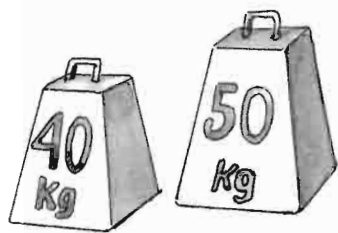
- You should be **more** careful.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more** interesting.
- Is it **more** expensive to go by car or by train?

D

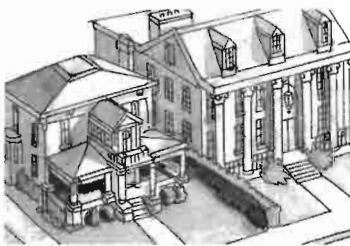
good/well → better bad → worse

- The weather wasn't very good yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- "Do you feel **better** today?" "No, I feel **worse**."
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

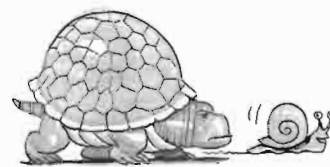
88.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (*older / more interesting, etc.*).



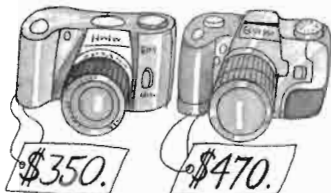
1. heavy heavier



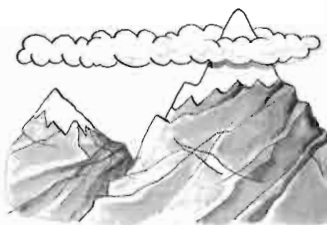
2. big _____



3. slow _____



4. expensive _____



5. high _____



6. dangerous _____

88.2 Write the comparative.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. old <u>older</u> | 6. good _____ |
| 2. strong _____ | 7. large _____ |
| 3. happy _____ | 8. serious _____ |
| 4. modern _____ | 9. pretty _____ |
| 5. important _____ | 10. crowded _____ |

88.3 Write the opposite.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. younger <u>older</u> | 4. better _____ |
| 2. colder _____ | 5. nearer _____ |
| 3. cheaper _____ | 6. easier _____ |

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

- Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger one.
- My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something more interesting.
- You're not very tall. Your brother is _____.
- David doesn't work very hard. I work _____.
- My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is _____.
- Your idea isn't very good. My idea is _____.
- This house isn't very nice. Our house is _____.
- My suitcase isn't very heavy. Your suitcase is _____.
- I'm not very interested in art. I'm _____ in history.
- It isn't very warm today. It was _____ yesterday.
- These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted _____.
- Britain isn't very big. France is _____.
- Los Angeles isn't very beautiful. San Francisco is _____.
- This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a _____ one?
- People today aren't very polite. In the past, they were _____.

A



She's taller than him.

I'm taller than you.

HOTEL PRICES (per person, per night)	
Capitol Hotel	\$350
Grand Hotel	\$110
Western Hotel	\$195

The Capitol Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

We use **than** after comparatives (older than . . . / more expensive than . . . , etc.).

- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It's easier to call than to write a letter.
- "How are you today?" "Not bad. Better than yesterday."
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

B

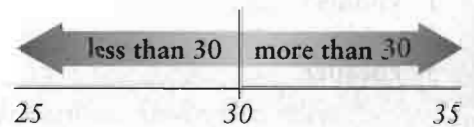
We usually say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them. You can say:

- I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

C

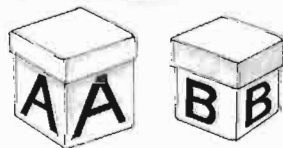
more/less than . . .

- A: How much are those shoes? Fifty dollars?
- B: No, more than that. (= more than \$50)
- The film was very short – less than an hour.
- They've got more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.



D

a little older / much older, etc.



Box A is a little bigger than Box B.



Box C is much bigger than Box D.

a little much	bigger	than . . .
	older	
	better	
	more difficult more expensive	

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Emma is a little older than Gary – she's 26 and he's 24.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.

89.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use *than*.



LIZ

1. I'm 26.
2. I'm not a good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet, 10 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8 o'clock.
5. I don't work very hard.
6. I don't have much money.
7. I'm a very good driver.
8. I'm not very patient.
9. I'm not a very good dancer.
10. I'm very intelligent.
11. I speak French very well.
12. I don't go to the movies much.



BEN

1. I'm 24.
2. I'm a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet, 8 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8:30.
5. I work very hard.
6. I have a lot of money.
7. I'm not a very good driver.
8. I'm very patient.
9. I'm a good dancer.
10. I'm not very intelligent.
11. I don't speak French well.
12. I go to the movies a lot.

1. Liz *is older than Ben* _____ .
2. Ben *is a better swimmer than Liz* _____ .
3. Liz is _____ .
4. Liz starts _____ Ben. _____ .
5. Ben _____ .
6. Ben has _____ .
7. Liz is a _____ .
8. Ben _____ .
9. Ben _____ .
10. Liz _____ .
11. Liz _____ .
12. Ben _____ .

89.2 Complete the sentences. Use *than*.

1. He isn't very tall. You *'re taller than him* OR *'re taller than he is* _____ .
2. She isn't very old. You're _____ .
3. I don't work very hard. You work _____ .
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You _____ .
5. I'm not a very good cook. You _____ .
6. We don't know many people. You _____ .
7. They don't have much money. You _____ .
8. I can't run very fast. You can _____ .
9. She hasn't been here very long. You _____ .
10. They didn't get up very early. You _____ .
11. He wasn't very surprised. You _____ .

89.3 Complete the sentences with *a little* or *much* + a comparative (*older/better, etc.*).

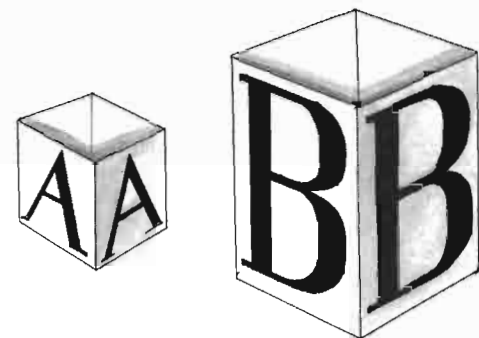
1. Emma is 26. Gary is 24.
Emma *is a little older than Gary* _____ .
2. Brian's mother is 52. His father is 69.
Brian's mother _____ .
3. My camera cost \$100. Yours cost \$96.
My camera _____ .
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel great.
I feel _____ .
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees Celsius. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
It's _____ .
6. Amy is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.
Amy _____ .

A

not as . . . as



She's old, but she's not as old as he is.



Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older)
- The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Western. (= the Western is more expensive)
- I don't play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't as cold. (= as cold as it was yesterday)

B

not as much as . . . / not as many as . . .

- I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got more money)
- I don't know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
- I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

C

Compare not as . . . as and than:

- Rome is not as old as Athens.
Athens is older than Rome. (*not* older as Rome)
- Tennis isn't as popular as soccer.
Soccer is more popular than tennis.
- I don't go out as much as you.
You go out more than me.

D

We usually say: as me / as him / as her, etc. You can say:

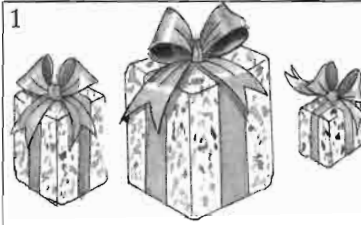
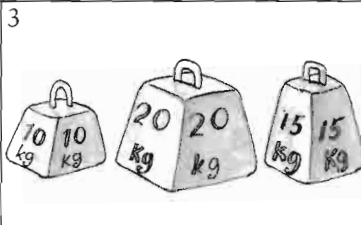


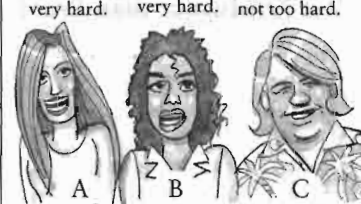
- She's not as old as him. *or* She's not as old as he is.
- You don't work as hard as me. *or* You don't work as hard as I do.

E

We say the same as . . .

- The weather today is the same as yesterday.
- Your son's hair is the same color as yours.
- I arrived at the same time as Tim.

90.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B, and C.

<p>1</p>  <p>A B C</p>	<p>2</p> <p>_____ A</p> <p>_____ B</p> <p>_____ C</p>	<p>3</p>  <p>A B C</p>
<p>4 I'm 45. I'm 50. I'm 40.</p>  <p>A B C</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>A B C</p>	<p>6 I don't work very hard. I work very hard. I work hard but not too hard.</p>  <p>A B C</p>

- A is *bigger than C but not as big as B*.
- A is _____ B but not _____ C.
- C is _____ A but _____.
- A is _____ but _____.
- B has _____.
- C works _____.

90.2 Write sentences with *as... as...*

- Athens is older than Rome. Rome *isn't as old as Athens*.
- My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't _____.
- You got up earlier than me. I didn't _____.
- We played better than them. They _____.
- I've been here longer than you. You _____.
- She's more nervous than him. He _____.

90.3 Write *as* or *than*.

- Athens is older *than* _____ Rome.
- I don't watch TV as much _____ you.
- You eat more _____ me.
- I feel better _____ I felt yesterday.
- Jim isn't as intelligent _____ he thinks.
- Belgium is smaller _____ Switzerland.
- Brazil isn't as big _____ Canada.
- I can't wait more _____ an hour.

90.4 Complete the sentences about Lee, Ed, and Kim. Use *the same age* / *the same street*, etc.



I'm 22.
I live on Hill Street.
I got up at 7:15.
I haven't got a car.



I'm 24.
I live on Oak Street.
I got up at 7:15.
My car is black.



I'm 24.
I live on Hill Street.
I got up at 7:45.
I have a car. It's black.

- (age) *Ed is the same age as Kim.*
- (street) Lee lives _____.
- (time) Lee got up _____.
- (color) Ed's _____.

A



Motel Prices in Jamestown

Best West Motel	\$120	Oak Tree Motel	\$85
Sleep Inn	\$105	Cozy Cabins	\$60
Rainbow Motel	\$95		

Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** the Sleep Inn.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** all the other motels in town.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Best West Motel is **the most expensive** motel in town.

Bigger / older / more expensive, etc., are *comparative* forms. (see Unit 88)
Biggest / oldest / most expensive, etc., are *superlative* forms.

B

The superlative form is **-est (oldest) or most . . . (most expensive)**.

Short words (old/cheap/nice, etc.) → **the -est**
 old → **the oldest** cheap → **the cheapest** nice → **the nicest**
but good → **the best** bad → **the worst**

Spelling (see Appendix 5): big → **the biggest** hot → **the hottest**

Words ending in **-y (easy/heavy, etc.) → the -iest**
 easy → **the easiest** heavy → **the heaviest** pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (careful/expensive/interesting, etc.) → **the most . . .**
 careful → **the most careful** interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say: **the oldest . . . / the most expensive . . .**, etc. (with **the**).

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
 (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive**, etc., without a noun.

- Ken is a good player, but he isn't **the best** on the team. (= the best player)


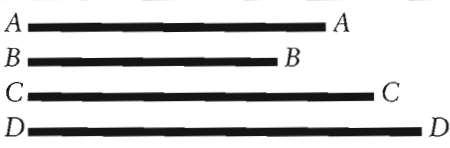
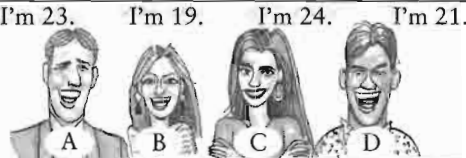
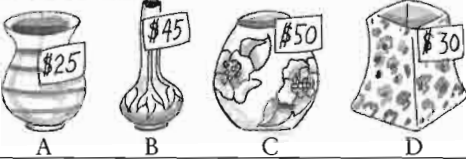
E

Superlative + **I've ever . . . / you've ever . . .**, etc.

- The movie was very bad. I think it's **the worst** movie I've ever seen.
- What is **the most unusual** thing you've ever done?

Exercises

91.1 Write sentences with comparatives (*older, etc.*) and superlatives (*the oldest, etc.*).

1.		(big/small) (A/D) <u>A is bigger than D.</u> (A) <u>A is the biggest.</u> (B) <u>B is the smallest.</u>
2.		(long/short) (C/A) C is _____ A. (D) D is _____ . (B) B _____ .
3.		(young/old) (D/C) D _____ . (B) _____ (C) _____
4.		(expensive/cheap) (D/A) _____ (C) _____ (A) _____
5.	<p>Restaurant A excellent Restaurant B good Restaurant C OK Restaurant D terrible</p>	(good/bad) (A/C) _____ (A) _____ (D) _____

91.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative + a noun (*the oldest building, etc.*).

- This building is very old. It's the oldest building in town.
- It was a very happy day. It was _____ of my life.
- It's a very good movie. It's _____ I've ever seen.
- She's a very popular singer. She's _____ in the country.
- It was a very bad mistake. It was _____ I've ever made.
- It's a very pretty city. It's _____ I've ever seen.
- It was a very cold day. It was _____ of the year.
- He's a very boring person. He's _____ I've ever met.

91.3 Write sentences with a superlative (*the longest, etc.*). Choose from the boxes.

Alaska	Jupiter	high	city	planet	Africa	South America
Brazil	the Nile	large	country	river	Australia	the USA
Everest	Sydney	long	mountain	state	the solar system	the world

- Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
- Brazil _____ .
- _____ .
- _____ .
- _____ .
- _____ .

A

I've only got \$2.00.



She can't buy a sandwich.
She doesn't have enough money.



He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't tall enough.

B

enough + noun (enough money / enough people, etc.)

- "Is there enough salt in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
- We wanted to play football, but we didn't have enough players.
- Why don't you buy a car? You have enough money. (*not* money enough)

enough without a noun

- I've got some money, but not enough to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car)
- "Would you like some more cake?" "No, thanks. I've had enough."
- You're always at home. You don't go out enough.

C

Adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough, etc.)

- "Do you want to go swimming?" "No, it isn't warm enough." (*not* enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't long enough. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + noun *but* adjective + enough

enough money	tall enough
enough time	good enough
enough people	old enough

D

We say:

enough for somebody/something

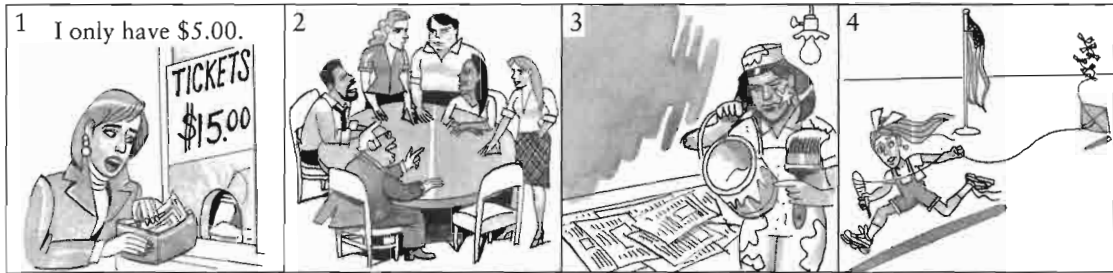
enough to do something

enough for somebody/something
to do something

- This sweater isn't big enough for me.
- I don't have enough money for a car.
- I don't have enough money to buy a car. (*not* for buy a car)
- Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (*not* for have)
- There aren't enough chairs for everybody to sit down.

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *enough* + one of these words:

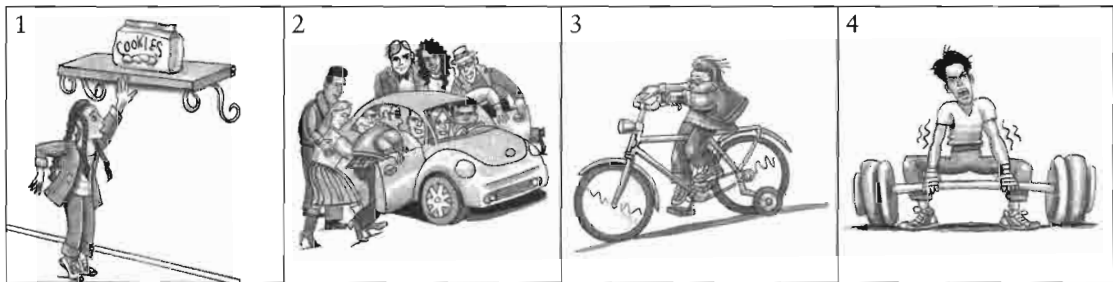
chairs ~~money~~ paint wind



1. She doesn't have *enough money* .
 2. There aren't _____ .
 3. She doesn't have _____ .
 4. There isn't _____ .

92.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives + *enough*:

big long strong ~~tall~~



1. She *isn't tall enough* .
 2. The car _____ .
 3. His legs _____ .
 4. He _____ .

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use *enough* with one of these words:

big eat fruit ~~loud~~ old practice ~~sugar~~ time tired

1. "Is there *enough salt* _____ in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
 2. Can you hear the radio? Is it *loud enough* _____ for you?
 3. He can quit school if he wants - he's _____ .
 4. Did you have _____ to answer all the questions on the exam?
 5. This house isn't _____ for a large family.
 6. Tina is very thin. She doesn't _____ .
 7. Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't _____ .
 8. You don't eat _____ . You should eat a banana every day.
 9. It's late, but I don't want to go to bed. I'm not _____ to sleep.

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use *enough* with the words in parentheses ().

1. We haven't got *enough money to buy* _____ a car. (money / buy)
 2. This knife isn't _____ tomatoes. (sharp / cut)
 3. The water wasn't _____ swimming. (warm / go)
 4. Do we have _____ sandwiches? (bread / make)
 5. We played well but not _____ the game. (well / win)
 6. I don't have _____ the newspaper. (time / read)

A



The shoes are **too big** for her.



Uggghhh!

There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

too + *adjective/adverb* (too big / too hard, etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down?
It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work **too hard**.



It's **too loud**.

C

too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good

- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Traffic is a problem here. There are **too many cars**.

D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:



too big

- The hat is **too big** for him.
- The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more than I want)
- I don't feel well. I ate **too much**.



not big enough

- The hat **isn't big enough** for him. (= it's too small)
- The radio **isn't loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I want more sugar)
- You're very thin. You **don't eat enough**.

E

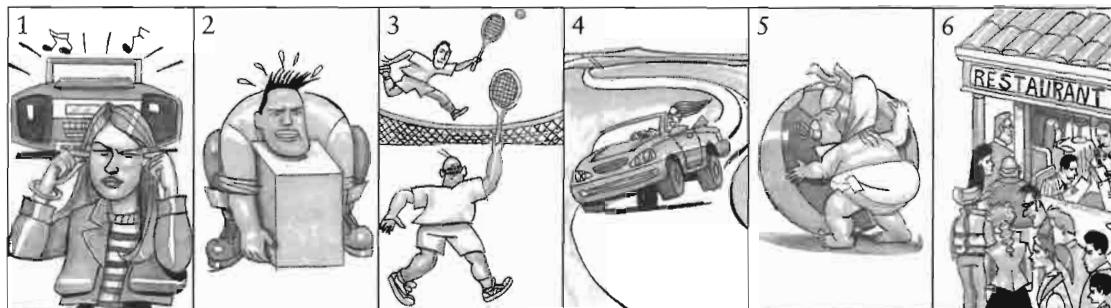
We say:

too . . . for somebody/something
too . . . to do something
too . . . for somebody/something
to do something

- These shoes are **too big** for me.
- It's a small house – **too small** for a large family.
- I'm **too tired** to go out. (*not* for go out)
- It's **too cold** to sit outside.
- She speaks **too fast** for me to understand.

93.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *too* + one of these words:

big crowded fast heavy loud low



1. The radio is *too loud* _____ .
2. The box is _____ .
3. The net is _____ .
4. She's driving _____ .
5. The ball is _____ .
6. The restaurant is _____ .

93.2 Write *too* / *too much* / *too many* / *enough*.

1. You're always at home. You don't go out *enough* _____ .
2. I don't like the weather here. There's *too much* _____ rain.
3. I can't wait for them. I don't have _____ time.
4. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were _____ people.
5. You're always tired. I think you work _____ hard.
6. "Did you have _____ to eat?" "Yes, thank you."
7. You drink _____ coffee. It's not good for you.
8. You don't eat _____ vegetables. You should eat some every day.
9. I don't like the weather here. It's _____ cold.
10. Our team didn't play well. We made _____ mistakes.
11. "Would you like some ice in your tea?" "Yes, but not _____."

93.3 Complete the sentences. Use *too* or *enough* with the words in parentheses ().

1. I couldn't work. I *was too tired* _____ . (tired)
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It *isn't loud enough* _____ . (loud)
3. I don't want to walk home. It's _____ . (far)
4. Don't buy anything at that store. It _____ . (expensive)
5. You can't put all your things in that bag. It _____ . (big)
6. I couldn't do the exercise. It _____ . (hard)
7. Your work needs to be better. It _____ . (good)
8. Sorry, I can't talk now. I _____ . (busy)
9. I thought the movie was boring. It _____ . (long)

93.4 Complete the sentences. Use *too* + adjective + *to* do something.

1. I'm not going out. *It's too cold to go out* _____ . (cold)
2. I'm not going to bed. It's _____ . (early)
3. They're not getting married. They're _____ . (young)
4. Nobody swims here. It's _____ . (dangerous)
5. Don't call her now. It's _____ . (late)
6. I didn't say anything. I was _____ . (surprised)

A

Verb + object

Sue **reads** **the newspaper** every day.
 subject verb object

The verb and the object are usually together.

We say:

Sue reads the newspaper every day.
 (not Sue reads every day the newspaper)



SUE (subject) THE NEWSPAPER (object)

verb + object

He	speaks	English	very well. (not He speaks very well English)
I	like	Italian food	very much. (not I like very much . . .)
Did you	watch	television	all evening?
We	invited	a lot of people	to the party.
Paul often	wears	a black hat.	
I	opened	the door	slowly.
I always	make	the same mistake.	
I'm going to	borrow	some money	from the bank.

B

Place and time

We went **to a party** **last night** .
 place time

Place is usually before time. We say:

We went to a party last night. (not last night to a party)

place (where?) + time (when? how long? how often?)

Liz walks	to work	every day. (not every day to work)
Will you be	at home	tonight? (not tonight at home?)
I usually go	to bed	early. (not early to bed)
We arrived	at the airport	at 7 o'clock.
They've lived	in the same house	for 20 years.
Jim's father has been	in the hospital	since June.

94.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Did you watch all evening television? Did you watch television all evening?
2. Sue reads a newspaper every day. OK
3. I like very much this picture. _____
4. Tom started last week his new job. _____
5. I want to speak English fluently. _____
6. April bought for her friend a present. _____
7. I drink every day three cups of coffee. _____
8. Don't eat your dinner too quickly! _____
9. I borrowed from my brother fifty dollars. _____

94.2 Put the words in order.

1. (the door / opened / I / slowly) I opened the door slowly.
2. (two letters / I / this morning / wrote) I _____.
3. (entered / quietly / the house / the thief) _____.
4. (Megan / very well / French / doesn't speak) _____.
5. (a lot of work / did / I / yesterday) _____.
6. (Mary / do you know / well?) _____.
7. (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) _____.
8. (the problem / carefully / I / explained) _____.
9. (we / at the airport / some friends / met) _____.
10. (did you buy / in Canada / that jacket?) _____.
11. (every day / do / the same thing / we) _____.
12. (football / don't like / very much / I) _____.

94.3 Put the words in order.

1. (to work / every day / walks / Liz) Liz walks to work every day.
2. (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I _____.
3. (goes / every year / to Puerto Rico / Julia) Julia _____.
4. (we / since 1998 / here / have lived) We _____.
5. (in Montreal / Sue / in 1980 / was born) Sue _____.
6. (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work) Paul _____.
7. (to the bank / yesterday afternoon / went / Megan)
Megan _____.
8. (I / in bed / this morning / had breakfast) I _____.
9. (next September / Barbara / to college / is going)
Barbara _____.
10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the yard / saw)
I _____.
11. (many times / have been / my parents / to Tokyo)
My _____.
12. (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
I _____.
13. (to the movies / tomorrow / are you going?)
Are _____?
14. (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
I _____.

A

We often use these words with the verb in the middle of a sentence.

always	often	ever	rarely	also	already	all
usually	sometimes	never	seldom	just	still	both

- My brother **never** speaks to me.
- She's **always** late.
- Do you **often** go to restaurants?
- I **sometimes** eat too much. (*or* Sometimes I eat too much.)
- I don't want to go to the movies. I've **already** seen that film.
- I've got three sisters. They're **all** married.

B

Always/never, etc., usually go *before* the verb.

verb

always	go
often	play
never	feel
(etc.)	(etc.)

- I **always** go to work by car. (*not* I go always)
- Megan **often** plays tennis. (*not* Megan plays often tennis)
- You **sometimes** look unhappy.
- They **usually** have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely** (*or* **seldom**) watch television.
- Richard is a good swimmer. He **also** plays tennis and volleyball. (*not* He plays also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They **all** live in the same city.

Always/never, etc., go *after* am/is/are/was/were.

am	always
is	often
are	never
was	(etc.)
were	

- I **am** never sick. (*not* I never am sick)
- They **are** usually at home in the evening.
- It **is** often very cold here in the winter.
- When I was a child, I **was** always late for school.
- "Is Nicole **still** here?" "No, she went home."
- I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

C

Always/never, etc., go *between* two verbs (have . . . been / can . . . find, etc.).

verb 1

verb 2

will	always	go
can		find
do		remember
(etc.)	often	(etc.)
	never	
	(etc.)	gone
have		been
has		(etc.)

- I **will** always remember you.
- It **doesn't** often rain here.
- Do you **usually** drive to work?
- I **can** never find my keys.
- **Have** you ever been to Egypt?
- Nicole isn't here. She **just** went out.
- The children **have** all finished their homework.

95.1 Look at Paul's answers. Write sentences with *often/never, etc.*



PAUL

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Do you ever play tennis? | Yes, often. | <i>Paul often plays tennis.</i> |
| 2. Do you get up early? | Yes, always. | He _____. |
| 3. Are you ever late for work? | No, never. | He _____. |
| 4. Do you ever get angry? | Sometimes. | _____. |
| 5. Do you go swimming much? | No, rarely. | _____. |
| 6. Are you home in the evening much? | Yes, usually. | _____. |

95.2 Write these sentences with the words in parentheses ().

- My brother calls me. (never) *My brother never calls me.*
- Susan is polite. (always) Susan _____.
- Kim started a new job. (just) Kim _____.
- I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) _____.
- The bus isn't late. (usually) _____.
- I don't eat fish. (often) _____.
- I will forget what you said. (never) _____.
- Have you lost your passport? (ever) _____.
- Do you work in the same place? (still) _____.
- They stay at the same hotel. (always) _____.
- Diane doesn't work on Saturday. (usually) _____.
- Is Tina here? (already) _____.
- What do you have for breakfast? (usually) _____.
- I can remember his name. (never) _____.

95.3 Write sentences with *also*. Use the words in parentheses ().

- Do you play football? (tennis) *Yes, and I also play tennis.*
- Do you speak Spanish? (Russian) Yes, and I _____.
- Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and _____.
- Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, _____.
- Did you buy any clothes? (some books) _____.

95.4 Write sentences with *both* and *all*.



I live in Buenos Aires.
I play soccer.
I'm a student.
I have a car.

I live in Buenos Aires.
I play soccer.
I'm a student.
I have a car.



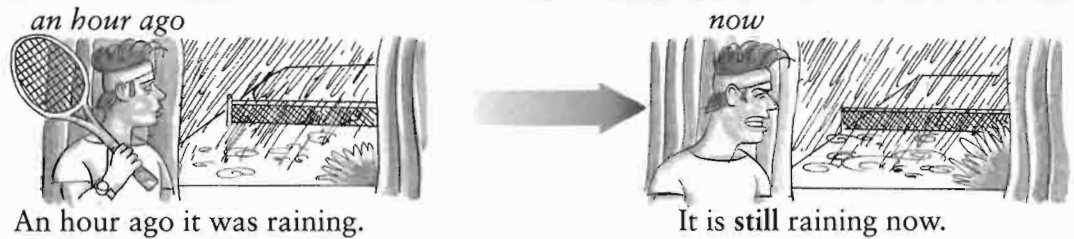
I'm married. I was born in England.
I live in Toronto.



- They both live in Buenos Aires.*
They _____ soccer.
They _____ students.
_____ cars.
- They _____ married.
They _____ England.
_____.

A

still



An hour ago it was raining.

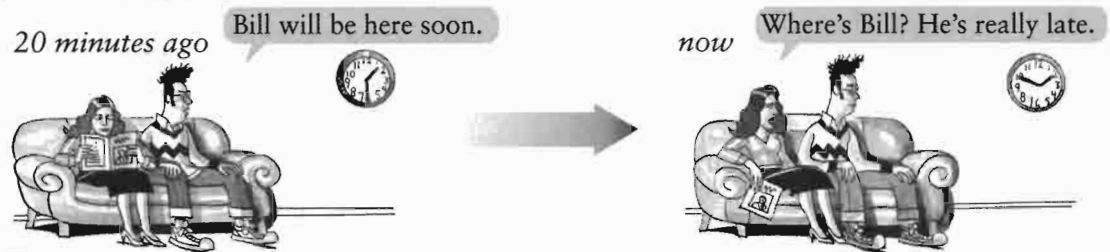
It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before

- I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry. (= I was hungry before and I'm hungry now)
- "Did you sell your car?" "No, I still have it."
- "Do you still live in Vancouver?" "No, I live in Montreal now."

B

yet



Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

They are still waiting for Bill. Bill hasn't come yet.

yet = until now

We use *yet* in *negative* sentences (He hasn't come yet.) and in *questions* (Has he come yet?). *Yet* is usually at the end of a sentence.

- "Where's Diane?" "She isn't here yet." (= she will come later)
- "What are you doing tonight?" "I don't know yet." (= I will know later)
- "Are you ready to go yet?" "Not yet. In a minute." (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready now)
- "Have you decided what to do yet?" "No, I'm still thinking about it."

Compare *yet* and *still*:

- She hasn't left yet. = She's still here. (*not* she's yet here)
- I haven't finished my homework yet. (= I'm still doing it)

C

already = earlier than expected

- "What time is John coming?" "He's already here."
- "I want to tell you what happened." "That's OK. I already know."
- Megan doesn't want to go to the movies. She's already seen the film.

96.1 You meet Lisa. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with *still*.

LISA *two years ago*



I play the piano.
I have an old car.
I'm a student.
I'm studying Japanese.
I go to the movies a lot.
I want to be a teacher.

1. *Do you still play the piano?* _____
2. Do you _____ ?
3. Are _____ ?
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

96.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

	<i>before</i>	→	<i>now</i>	
1.				(before) <i>They were waiting for the bus</i> (still) <i>They are still waiting.</i> (yet) <i>The bus hasn't come yet.</i>
2.	I'm looking for a job. 			(before) He was _____ (still) He _____ (yet) _____ yet.
3.				(before) She _____ (still) _____ (yet) _____
4.				(before) They _____ (still) _____ (yet) _____

96.3 Write questions with *yet*.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Maybe she is ready now. You ask Sue: *Are you ready yet?* _____
2. You are waiting for Megan to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Maybe she is here now. You ask somebody: _____ Megan _____ ?
3. Mary had a blood test and is waiting for the report. Maybe she has gotten the report now. You ask her: _____ you _____ ?
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He couldn't decide where to go on vacation. Maybe he has decided now. You ask him: _____ ?

96.4 Complete the sentences. Use *already*.

1. What time is John coming?
2. Do you and Joe want to see the movie?
3. I have to see Julie before she leaves.
4. Do you need a pen?
5. Should I pay the bill?
6. Should I tell Paul about the meeting?

He *'s already* _____ here.
No, we *'ve already seen* _____ it.
It's too late. She _____
No thanks. I _____ one.
No, it's OK. I _____
No, he _____ . I told him.

A

give/lend/pass/send/show

After these verbs, there are two possible structures:

(give) something to somebody

- I gave the keys to Liz.

(give) somebody something

- I gave Liz the keys.



I the keys LIZ

B

(give) something to somebody

		something	to somebody
That's my book.	Give	it	to me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	give	them	to her?
Can you	give	these flowers	to your mother?
I	lend	my car	to a friend of mine.
Did you	send	a postcard	to Kate?
We've seen these photos. You	showed	them	to us.

C

(give) somebody something

		somebody	something	
	Give	me	that book.	It's mine.
Tom	gave	his mother	some flowers.	
I	lent	John	some money.	
How much money did you	lend	him?		
I	sent	you	a postcard.	
Nicole	showed	us	her vacation photos.	
Can you	pass	me	the salt,	please?

You can also say: buy/get somebody something.

- I **bought** my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother)
- Can you **get** me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)

D

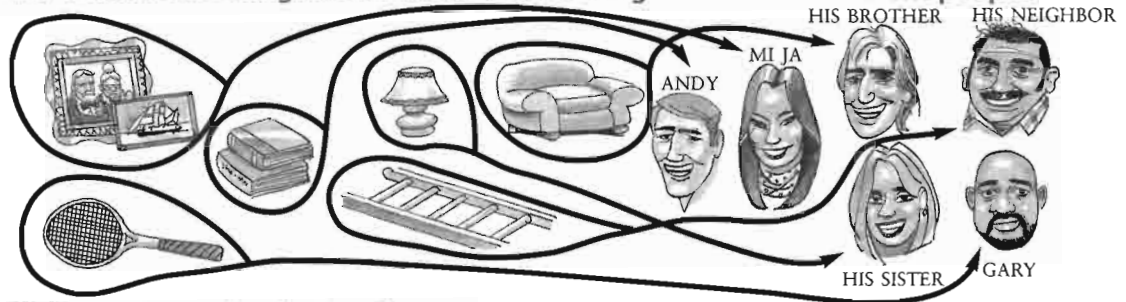
Compare:

- I gave the keys to Liz.
I **gave** Liz the keys. (*but not* I gave to Liz the keys)
- That's my book. Can you **give it to me**?
Can you **give me** that book? (*but not* give to me that book)

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) when the *thing* is *it* or *them*.

- I gave **it** to her. (*not* I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them** to your father. (*not* Give your father them)

97.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning *He gave . . .*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. What did Mark do with the armchair? | <i>He gave it to his brother.</i> |
| 2. What did he do with the tennis racket? | He gave _____. |
| 3. What happened to the books? | He _____. |
| 4. What about the lamp? | _____. |
| 5. What did he do with the pictures? | _____. |
| 6. And the ladder? | _____. |

97.2 You gave some gifts to these people. Write a sentence for each person.



- | | |
|------------------------------|----------|
| 1. <i>I gave Paul a book</i> | 4. _____ |
| 2. I gave _____. | 5. _____ |
| 3. I _____. | 6. _____ |

97.3 Write questions beginning *Can you give me . . . ? / Can you pass me . . . ? , etc.*

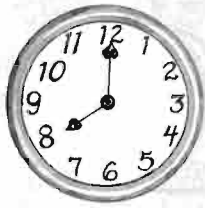
- (you want the salt – pass) *Can you pass me the salt?*
- (you need an umbrella – lend) Can you _____ ?
- (you want my address – give) Can _____ your _____ ?
- (you need ten dollars – lend) _____
- (you want some information – send) _____
- (you want to see the letter – show) _____
- (you want some stamps – get) _____

97.4 Which is right?

- I gave to Liz the keys. / I gave Liz the keys. (*I gave Liz the keys* is right.)
- I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
- Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
- I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
- Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
- This is Megan's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
- I showed to the officer my driver's license. / I showed the officer my driver's license.

A

at



8 o'clock
10:30
at midnight, etc.
night
the end of ...

- I start work at 8 o'clock.
- The banks close at 5:00.
- I can't sleep at night.
- I'm taking a trip at the end of October.

B

on



(on) Sunday(s), Monday(s), etc.
April 25, June 6, etc.
Monday morning, Tuesday afternoon, Friday night, etc.

You can say:

- Goodbye! See you on Friday. or See you Friday. (with or without on)
- Do you work on Sundays? or Do you work Sundays?
- The concert is on November 20th. or The concert is November 20th.
- I'm leaving on Friday night. or I'm leaving Friday night.

We say on the weekend / on weekends (always with on).

- They like to go to restaurants on the weekend / on weekends.

C

in



in April, June, etc.
2005, 1990, etc.
the spring/summer/fall/winter
the morning/afternoon/evening

- I'm taking a trip in October.
- Emma was born in 1984.
- The park is beautiful in the fall.
- Do you often go out in the evening?

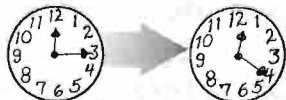
D

We do not use at/on/in before next/last/this/every.

- I'm going to Chicago next Monday. (*not* on next Monday)
- We go on vacation every summer. Last summer we went to Europe.
- What are you doing this weekend?

E

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years, etc.



now in five minutes

- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes.
(= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Goodbye! I'll see you in a few days.
(= a few days from now)

98.1 Write at or in.

1. Emma was born *in* _____ 1984.
2. I got up _____ 8 o'clock this morning.
3. I like to get up early _____ the morning.
4. I like to look at the stars _____ night.
5. My brother got married _____ May.
6. We often go to the beach _____ the summer.
7. Let's meet _____ 7:30 tomorrow evening.
8. The company started _____ 1989.
9. I'll send you the money _____ the end of the month.
10. The café is open _____ the evening. It closes _____ midnight.

98.2 Write at/in/on.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>in</i> _____ April | 6. _____ September | 11. _____ Friday morning |
| 2. <i>on</i> _____ June 6 | 7. _____ September 24 th | 12. _____ Saturday night |
| 3. _____ half past two | 8. _____ the weekend | 13. _____ night |
| 4. _____ 1987 | 9. _____ 11:45 | 14. _____ the end of the day |
| 5. _____ Wednesday | 10. _____ the morning | 15. _____ the winter |

98.3 Which sentence is correct – A, B, or both of them?

- | A | B | |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. I'm taking a trip in October. | I'm taking a trip on October. | <u>A</u> |
| 2. Do you work Sundays? | Do you work on Sundays? | <u>both</u> |
| 3. I always feel tired at the evening. | I always feel tired in the evening. | _____ |
| 4. I'm leaving next Saturday. | I'm leaving on next Saturday. | _____ |
| 5. Tim started his new job on May 18 th . | Tim started his new job May 18 th . | _____ |
| 6. Laura finished high school in 1998. | Laura finished high school 1998. | _____ |
| 7. We meet on every Tuesday. | We meet every Tuesday. | _____ |
| 8. We don't often go out in night. | We don't often go out at night. | _____ |
| 9. I can't meet you Thursday. | I can't meet you on Thursday. | _____ |
| 10. Lisa saw Sam Monday night. | Lisa saw Sam at Monday night. | _____ |
| 11. I'm leaving in the end of this month. | I'm leaving at the end of this month. | _____ |
| 12. Tim goes to the gym on Fridays. | Tim goes to the gym Fridays. | _____ |

98.4 Write sentences with in.

1. It's 5:25 now. The train leaves at 5:30.
The train leaves in five minutes.
2. It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.
I'll _____.
3. Today is June 14th. My exam is June 28th.
My _____.
4. It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3:30.
Tom _____.

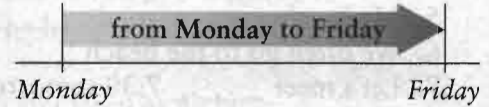
A

from . . . to . . .

- We lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from . . . until . . .

- We lived in Canada from 1982 until 1990.

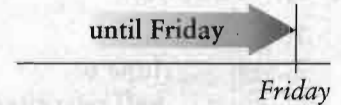


B

until + the end of a period of time

until
Friday
December
3 o'clock
I come back

- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book until 3 A.M.
- Wait here until I come back.



You can also say till (= until).

- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:

- "How long will you be away?" "Until Monday."
- "When are you coming back?" "On Monday."

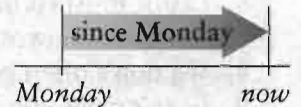
C

since + a time in the past (to now)

We use since after the present perfect (have been / have done, etc.).

since
Monday
1998
2:30
I arrived

- John is in the hospital. He has been there since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- Mr. and Mrs. Han have been married since 1988. (= from 1988 to now)
- It's been raining since I arrived.



Compare:

- We lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
We lived in Canada until 1990.
- Now we live in Japan. We came to Japan in 1990.
We've lived in Japan since 1990. (= from 1990 until now)

We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years / a long time, etc.).

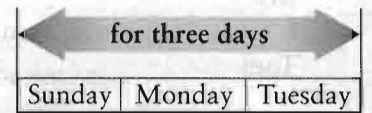
- We've lived in Japan for a long time. (not since a long time)

D

for + a period of time

for
three days
ten years
ten minutes
a long time

- Ed stayed with us for three days.
- She's been married for ten years.
- I'm going away for a few weeks.
- I'm going away for the weekend.



99.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use *from ... to / until / since*.



I live in Japan now.
I lived in Canada before.
I came to Japan in 1990.



I live in Australia now.
I lived in Korea before.
I came to Australia in 2001.



I work in a restaurant now.
I worked in a hotel before.
I started work in the restaurant in 2000.



I'm a salesman now.
I was a teacher before.
I started work as a salesman in 1999.

- (Alex / Canada / 1982–1990) Alex lived *in Canada from 1982 to 1990*.
- (Alex / Canada / → 1990) Alex lived in Canada _____ 1990.
- (Alex / Japan / 1990 →) Alex has lived in Japan _____.
- (Jin Sook / Korea / → 2001) Jin Sook lived in _____.
- (Jin Sook / Australia / 2001 →) Jin Sook has lived in _____.
- (Beth / a hotel / 1999–2000) Beth worked _____ 1999 _____.
- (Beth / a restaurant / 2000 →) Beth has worked _____.
- (Adam / a teacher / 1995–1999) Adam was a _____.
- (Adam / a salesman / 1999 →) Adam has been _____.

Now write sentences with *for*.

- (Alex / Canada) *Alex lived in Canada for eight years.*
- (Alex / Japan) Alex has lived in Japan _____.
- (Jin Sook / Australia) Jin Sook has _____.
- (Beth / a hotel) Beth worked _____.
- (Beth / restaurant) Beth _____.
- (Adam / a teacher) Adam _____.
- (Adam / a salesman) Adam _____.

99.2 Write *until/since/for*.

- Mr. and Mrs. Han have been married *since* _____ 1988.
- I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed _____ 10 o'clock.
- We waited for Sue _____ half an hour, but she didn't come.
- "How long have you been here?" " _____ seven-thirty."
- "How long did you stay at the party last night?" " _____ midnight."
- David and I are good friends. We have known each other _____ ten years.
- I'm tired. I'm going to lie down _____ a few minutes.
- (*in an airplane that's landing*) Please stay in your seats _____ the plane stops at the gate.
- This is my house. I've lived here _____ I was seven years old.
- Ampol is out of town. He'll be away _____ Wednesday.
- Next week I'm going to Los Angeles _____ three days.
- I usually finish work at 5:30, but sometimes I work _____ six.
- "How long have you known Amy?" " _____ we were in high school."
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for you _____ twenty minutes.

A

before, during, and after



before the movie



during the movie



after the movie

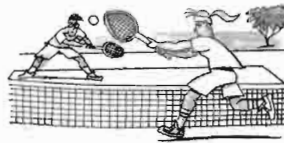
- Everybody is nervous **before** exams.
- I fell asleep **during** the movie.
- We were tired **after** our visit to the museum.

B

before, while, and after



before we played



while we were playing



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before** you go out.
- I often fall asleep **while** I'm reading.
- They watched TV **after** they did the dishes.

C

during, while, and for

We use **during** + *noun* (during the movie). We use **while** + *verb* (while I'm watching).

- We didn't speak **during** the meal. *but*
- We didn't speak **while** we were eating. (*not* during we were eating)

Use **for** (*not* during) + *a period of time* (three days / two hours / a year, etc.).

- We played tennis **for** two hours. (*not* during two hours)
- I lived in London **for** a year. (*not* during a year)

D

You can use **before/after** + *-ing* (before going / after eating, etc.).

- I always have breakfast **before** going to work. (= before I go to work)
- **After** doing the dishes, they watched TV. (= after they did)

Do not say "before to go," "after to do," etc.

- **Before** eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not* before to eat)
- I started work **after** reading the newspaper. (*not* after to read)

I was -ing (Past Continuous) Units 13-14 **For** Unit 99 **Preposition + -ing** Unit 107
Before/after/while/when Unit 112

Exercises

100.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after during
before while

+

lunch the end they went to Australia
the concert the exam you're waiting
the course the night

1. Everybody was nervous *before the exam*.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning and another three hours _____.
3. The movie was really boring. We left _____.
4. Anne went to night school to learn German. She learned a lot _____.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London _____.
6. A: Somebody broke a window _____ . Did you hear anything?
B: No, I was asleep.
7. Would you like to sit down _____ ?
8. "Are you going home _____ ?" "Yes, we have to get up early tomorrow."

100.2 Write *during/while/for*.

1. We didn't speak *while* _____ we were eating.
2. We didn't speak *during* _____ the meal.
3. Eric called _____ you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome _____ five days.
5. Karen wrote a lot of letters _____ she was on vacation.
6. The students looked very bored _____ the class.
7. I fell out of bed _____ I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV _____ six hours.
9. I don't usually watch TV _____ the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV _____ you're having dinner?

100.3 Complete the sentences. Use *-ing* (*doing, etc.*).

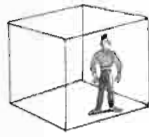
1. After *doing* _____ the dishes, they watched TV.
2. I felt sick after _____ too much chocolate.
3. I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before _____ it.
4. I felt terrible when I got up this morning. I felt better after _____ a shower.
5. After _____ my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before _____ to a foreign country, you should learn a little of the language.

100.4 Write sentences with *before + -ing* and *after + -ing*.

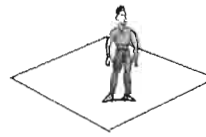
1. They did the dishes. Then they watched TV.
After doing the dishes, they watched TV
2. John finished high school. Then he worked in a department store for two years.
John worked _____
3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
Before _____
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
After _____
5. Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
Let's _____

A

in



in a room
in a store
in a car
in the water



in a yard
in a town
in a park
in Brazil

- “Where’s David?” “In the kitchen. / In the back yard. / In Tokyo.”
- What’s in that box / in that bag / in that closet?
- Angela works in a store / in a bank / in a factory.
- I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the ocean.
- Milan is in northern Italy.
- I live in a city, but I’d like to live in the country.

B

at



at the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic light



at her desk

- There’s somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic light.
- Julia is working at her desk.

at the top (of the page)

Also: at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of . . .)

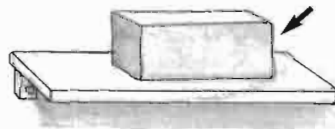
- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the block.



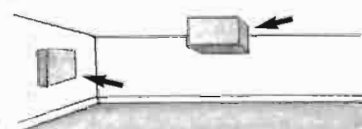
at the bottom (of the page)

C

on



on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor, etc.

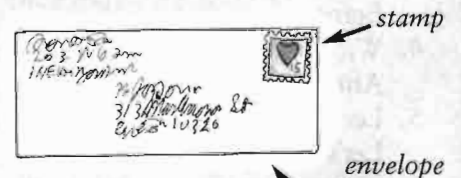


on a wall
on the ceiling
on a door, etc.

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don’t sit on the grass. It’s wet.
- There’s a stamp on the envelope.



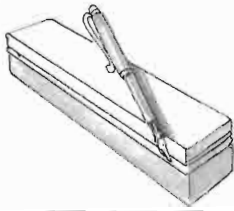




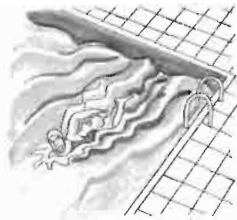




Also: on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorcycle

- Who’s that man on the motorcycle?



Exercises

101.1 Answer the questions. Use *in/at/on* + the words in parentheses ().

1 (the kitchen) 	2 (the box) 	3 (the box) 	4 (the wall) 
5 (the bus stop) 	6 (the field) 	7 (the balcony) 	8 (the pool) 
9 (the window) 	10 (the ceiling) 	11 (the table) 	12 (the table) 

- Where is he? *In the kitchen.*
- Where are the shoes? _____
- Where is the pen? _____
- Where is the clock? _____
- Where is the bus? _____
- Where are the horses? _____
- Where are they standing? _____
- Where is she swimming? _____
- Where is he standing? _____
- Where is the spider? _____
- Where is he sitting? _____
- Where is she sitting? _____

101.2 Write *in/at/on*.

- Don't sit *on* _____ the grass. It's wet.
- What do you have _____ the bag?
- Look! There's a man _____ the roof. What's he doing?
- There are a lot of fish _____ this river.
- Our house is number 45 – the number is _____ the door.
- "Is the post office near here?" "Yes, turn left _____ the traffic light."
- I have a small vegetable garden _____ the back yard.
- My sister lives _____ Mexico City.
- There's a small park _____ the top of the hill.
- I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody _____ the door.
- Munich is a large city _____ southern Germany.
- There's a gas station _____ the end of the block.
- It's difficult to carry a lot of things _____ a bicycle.
- I looked at the list of names. My name was _____ the bottom of the list.
- There's a mirror _____ the wall _____ the living room.

A

in

in bed
in prison / jail
in the hospital
in the sky
in the world
in a newspaper / in a book
in a photograph / in a picture
in a car / in a taxi
in the middle (of . . .)

- “Where’s Kate?” “She’s **in bed.**”
- Karen’s husband is **in jail** for driving without a license.
- David’s father is sick. He’s **in the hospital.**
- I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
- What’s the largest city **in the world?**
- I read about the accident **in the newspaper.**
- You look sad **in this photograph.**
- Did you come here **in your car?**
- There’s a big tree **in the middle** of the yard.

B

at

at work
at the station / at the airport
at the post office / at the supermarket
at Tracy’s (house) / at the doctor’s
(office) / at the hairdresser’s, etc.
at a concert / at a party / at a football
game, etc.

- “Where’s Kate?” “She’s **at work.**”
- Do you want me to meet you **at the airport?**
- I saw your brother **at the post office** today.
- “Where were you Friday?” “**At my sister’s.**”
- I saw Tom **at the doctor’s.**
- There weren’t many people **at the party.**

You can say **be/stay at home** or **be/stay home** (with or without at).

- Is Tom **at home?** *or* Is Tom **home?**

You can often use **in** or **at** for hotels and restaurants.

- We stayed **at** a nice hotel. *or* We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

C

You can say **in school** or **at school**, but there is a difference.

She’s **at school** = she is there now

- “Where’s your sister? Is she home?” “No, she’s **at school.**”

She’s **in school** = she is a student (in high school / college / medical school, etc.)

- “Does your sister have a job?” “No, she’s still **in school.**”

D

on

on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a boat
on the first floor (*or* ground floor) / on the
second floor, etc.
on a street
on the way (to . . .) / on the way home

- Did you come here **on the bus?**
- The office is **on the first floor.**
(*not* in the first floor)
- My brother lives **on a nice street.**
- I met Lee **on the way** to work / **on my way home.**

102.1 Answer the questions. Use *in/at/on* + the words in parentheses ().



- Where is she? *In the hospital.*
- Where are they? _____
- Where is he? _____
- Where are they? _____
- Where are the stars? _____
- Where are they? _____
- Where is Brian? _____
- Where is the restaurant? _____
- Where is she? _____
- Where are they? _____
- Where are they? _____
- Where are they? _____

102.2 Write *in/at/on*.

- "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's *at* school."
- There was a big table _____ the middle of the room.
- What is the longest river _____ the world?
- Were there many people _____ the concert last night?
- Will you be _____ home tomorrow afternoon?
- Who is the man _____ this photograph? Do you know him?
- "Is your son going to get married soon?" "No, he's still _____ college."
- Eric is coming by train. I'm going to meet him _____ the station.
- Charlie is _____ the hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
- How many pages are there _____ that book?
- "Are you hungry after your trip?" "No, I ate _____ the plane."
- I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down _____ the way.
- "Is Tom here?" "No, he's _____ his brother's."
- Don't believe everything you see _____ the newspaper!
- I walked to work, but I came home _____ the bus.
- A (*on the phone*): Can I speak to Anne, please?
B: No, sorry. She'll be _____ the university until 5:00 today.

A

to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...



- We're going to New York next week.
- I want to go to Mexico.
- We walked from my house to the mall.
- What time do you go to bed?



- The bus is going to the airport.
- Karen didn't go to work yesterday.
- I went to a party last night.
- We'd like you to come to our house.

in/at (see Units 101–102)

be / stay / do something (etc.) in ...



- The Statue of Liberty is in New York.
- My brother lives in Mexico.
- The best stores are in the mall.
- I like to read in bed.

be/stay/do (etc.) something at ...



- The bus is at the airport.
- Amy wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met her at a party.
- Amy stayed at her brother's house.

B

home

go/come/walk (etc.) to home

- I'm tired. I'm going home.
(not to home)
- Did you walk home?

be/stay (at) home (with or without at)

- I'm staying home tonight. (or I'm staying at home.)
- But: do something (work, watch TV, etc.) at home
- Dan doesn't go to an office. He works at home.
(not he works home)

C

arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Mexico / arrive in Tokyo, etc.)

- They arrived in Brazil last week. (not arrived to Brazil)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work, etc.)

- What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place)

- What time did you get to the hotel?
- When did you get to Tokyo?

get home / arrive home (no preposition)

- I was tired when I got home. (or I was tired when I arrived home.)

Exercises

103.1 Write to or in.

1. I like to read *in* _____ bed.
2. We're going _____ Italy next month.
3. Sue is on vacation _____ Chile right now.
4. I have to go _____ the bank today.
5. I was tired, so I stayed _____ bed.
6. What time do you go _____ bed?
7. Does this bus go _____ the airport?
8. Would you like to live _____ another country?

103.2 Write to or at if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Paula didn't go *to* _____ work yesterday.
2. I'm tired. I'm going _____ home. (*no preposition*)
3. Amy is sick. She went _____ the doctor.
4. Would you like to come _____ a party on Saturday?
5. "Is Liz _____ home?" "No, she went _____ work."
6. There were 20,000 people _____ the football game.
7. Why did you go _____ home early last night?
8. A boy jumped into the river and swam _____ the other side.
9. There were a lot of people waiting _____ the bus stop.
10. We had dinner _____ a restaurant, and then we went back _____ the hotel.

103.3 Write to, at, or in if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Joe is coming tomorrow. I'm meeting him *at* _____ the airport.
2. We're going _____ a concert tomorrow night.
3. I went _____ Chile last year.
4. How long did you stay _____ Chile?
5. Next year we hope to go _____ Japan to visit some friends.
6. Do you want to go _____ the movies tonight?
7. Did you park your car _____ the airport?
8. After the accident three people were taken _____ the hospital.
9. How often do you go _____ the dentist?
10. "Is Diane here?" "No, she's _____ Amy's."
11. My house is _____ the end of the block on the left.
12. I went _____ Mary's house, but she wasn't _____ home.
13. There were no taxis, so we had to walk _____ home.
14. "Who did you see _____ the party?" "I didn't go _____ the party."

103.4 Write to, at, or in if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. What time do you get _____ work?
2. What time do you get _____ home?
3. I arrived _____ the party after 9:00.
4. When did you arrive _____ Dallas?
5. The plane got _____ Paris on time.
6. We arrived _____ home very late.

103.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.

1. At three o'clock this morning I was *in bed* _____.
2. Yesterday I went _____.
3. At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was _____.
4. Someday I'd like to go _____.
5. At 9 o'clock last night I was _____.

A

next to / between / in front of / in back of



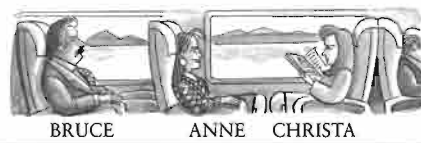
- Adam is **next to** Bob.
- Bob is **between** Adam and Carla.
- Don is **in front of** Bob.
- Carla is **in back of** Don.

Also:

- Adam is **on the left**.
- Ellen is **on the right**.
- Don is **in the middle** (of the group).

B

across from / in front of



- Anne is sitting **in front of** Bruce.
- Anne is sitting **across from** Christa.
- Christa is sitting **across from** Anne.

C

by (= next to)



by the window

- Our house is **by the ocean**.
(= next to the ocean)
- Who is that man **by the window**?
- "Is there a pay phone here?"
"Yes, **by the door**."

D

under



under the table



under a tree

- The cat is **under the table**.
- The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

E

above and below



- A is **above the line**.
(= higher than the line)



- B is **below the line**.
(= lower than the line)



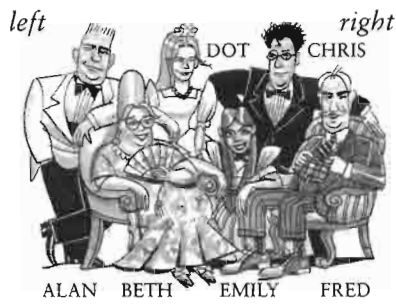
- The pictures are **above the shelves**.



- The shelves are **below the pictures**.

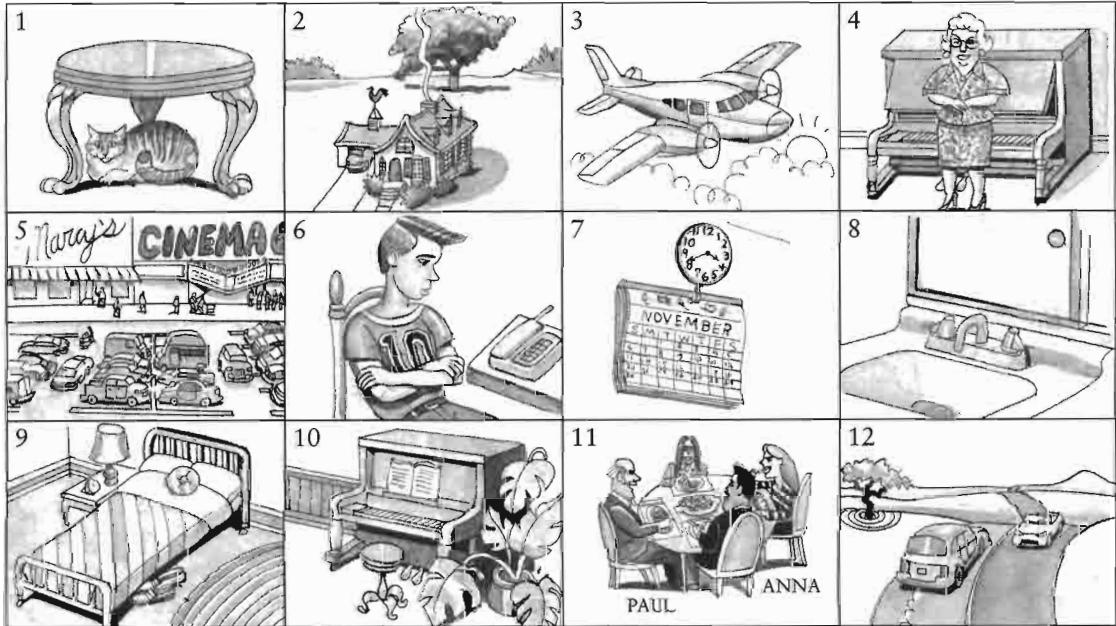
Exercises

104.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



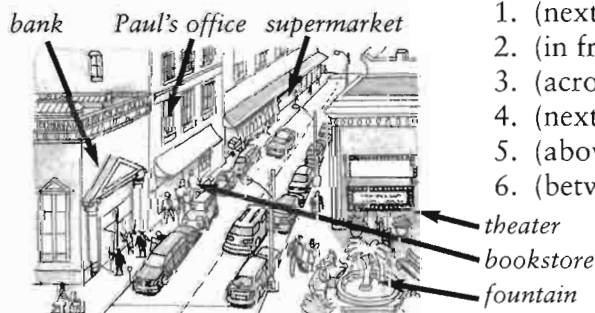
- Dot is standing between Alan and Chris.
- Chris is standing _____ Fred.
- Beth is sitting _____ Alan.
- Emily is sitting _____ Beth and Fred.
- Chris is standing _____ Dot.
- Alan is standing _____ Beth.
- Alan is standing _____ left.
- Fred is sitting _____ right.
- Emily is sitting _____ middle.

104.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

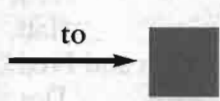
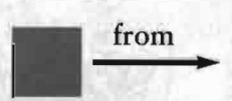
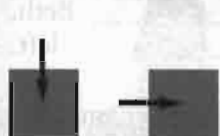
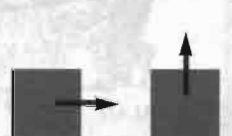
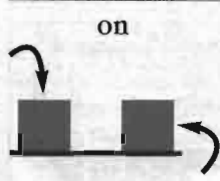
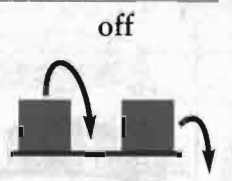


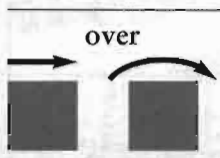
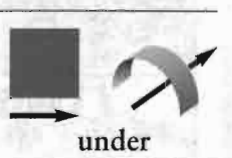



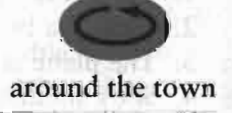
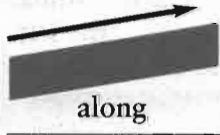

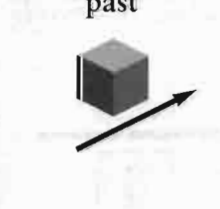
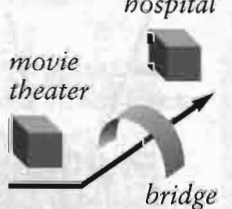


- The cat is under the table.
- There's a big tree _____ the house.
- The plane is flying _____ the clouds.
- She's standing _____ the piano.
- The movie theater is _____ the right.
- He's sitting _____ the phone.
- The calendar is _____ the clock.
- The cabinet is _____ the sink.
- There are some shoes _____ the bed.
- The plant is _____ the piano.
- Paul is sitting _____ Anna.
- In Japan people drive _____ the left.

104.3 Write sentences about the picture. Use the words in parentheses ().



- (next to) The bank is next to the bookstore.
- (in front of) The _____ .
- (across from) _____
- (next to) _____
- (above) _____
- (between) _____

 <p>to</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Tracy is going to Hawaii next week. ■ We walked from the hotel to the restaurant. ■ A lot of English words come from Latin. 	 <p>from</p>
 <p>into (in)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ We jumped into the water. ■ A man came out of the house and got into a car. ■ Why are you looking out of the window? ■ I took the old batteries out of the radio. <p>We say put something in . . . (<i>not usually</i> into).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ I put new batteries in the radio. 	 <p>out of</p>
 <p>on</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Don't put your feet on the table. ■ Please take your feet off the table. ■ I'm going to hang some pictures on the wall. ■ Be careful! Don't fall off your bicycle. ■ We got on the bus downtown. 	 <p>off</p>
 <p>up</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ We walked up the hill to the house. ■ Be careful! Don't fall down the stairs. 	 <p>down</p>
 <p>over</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The plane flew over the mountains. ■ I climbed over the wall into the yard. ■ Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder. 	 <p>under</p>
 <p>through</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A bird flew into the room through a window. ■ The old highway goes through the city. ■ The new highway goes around the city. ■ The bus stop is just around the corner. ■ I walked around the town and took some pictures. 	 <p>around</p>  <p>around the town</p>
 <p>along</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ I was walking along the street with my dog. ■ Let's go for a walk along the river. ■ The dog swam across the river. 	 <p>across</p>
 <p>past</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ They walked past me without speaking. ■ A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital? ■ B: Go along this street, past the movie theater, under the bridge, and the hospital is on the left. 	 <p>hospital</p> <p>movie theater</p> <p>bridge</p>

Exercises

105.1 Somebody asks you for directions.

Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning *Go ...*



Excuse me, where is ... ?

Go ...



1 Go past the library.	2 Go the bridge.	3 the hill.	4 the steps.	5 this street.
6 	7 	8 	9 	10

105.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition.

1 	2 	3 	4 	5
6 	7 	8 	9 	10

- The dog swam across the river.
- A book fell _____ the shelf.
- A plane flew _____ the town.
- A woman got _____ the car.
- A girl ran _____ the street.
- Suddenly a car came _____ the corner.
- They all drove _____ the town.
- They got _____ the train.
- The moon travels _____ the earth.
- They got _____ the house _____ a window.

105.3 Write a preposition (*over / from / out of*, etc.).

- I looked _____ the window and watched the people in the street.
- My house is very near here. It's just _____ the corner.
- Do you know how to put film _____ this camera?
- How far is it _____ here _____ the airport?
- We walked _____ the museum for an hour and saw a lot of beautiful pictures.
- You can put your coat _____ the back of the chair.
- In tennis, you have to hit the ball _____ the net.
- Silvia took a key _____ her bag and opened the door.

A

on

- on vacation
- on television
- on the radio
- on the phone
- on fire
- on time (= not late)

- Tracy isn't at work this week. She's **on vacation**.
- We watched the news **on television**.
- We listened to the news **on the radio**.
- I spoke to Carol **on the phone** last night.
- The house is **on fire**! Call the fire department.
- "Was the train late?" "No, it was **on time**."

B

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometers an hour / at 100 degrees, etc.

- Lisa got married **at 21**. (*or . . . at the age of 21*)
- A car uses more gas **at 70 miles an hour** than at 55.
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

C

by car / by bus / by plane (*or by air*) / by boat / by bicycle, etc.

- Do you like traveling **by train**?
- Can you get there **by bike**?

But: **on foot**

- You can't get there **by car**.
You have to go **on foot**.

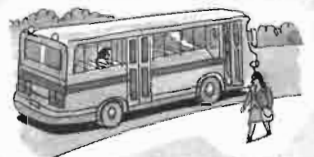
a book **by . . .** / a painting **by . . .** /
a piece of music **by . . .**, etc.

- Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?
- Who is that painting **by**? Picasso?

by after the passive (see Unit 22)

- I was bitten **by** a dog.

by bus



on foot

(the title)
by
(the writer)



D

with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel **or with friends**?
- Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.
- Do you like your coffee **with or without milk**?
- I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

a man **with** a beard / a woman **with** glasses, etc.

- Do you know that man **with the beard**?
- I'd like to have a house **with a big yard**.



a man **with**
a beard



a woman **with**
glasses

E

talk/speak/think/hear/know about . . .

- Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- I don't know much **about cars**.

a book / a question / a program (etc.) **about . . .**

- Did you see **the program about computers** on TV last night?

Exercises

106.1 Complete the sentences. Use *on* + one of these:

the phone ~~the radio~~ TV time vacation

1. We listened to the news on the radio.
2. Please don't be late. Try to be here _____.
3. I won't be here next week. I'm going _____.
4. "Did you see Nicole?" "No, but I talked to her _____."
5. "What's _____ tonight?" "There's a movie at 9 o'clock."

106.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (*at/by*, etc.).



1. I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
2. Last year, they took a trip around the world _____ boat.
3. Who's the woman _____ short hair?
4. They're talking _____ the weather.
5. That car is _____ fire!
6. She's listening to some music _____ Mozart.
7. They're _____ vacation.
8. He's reading a book _____ grammar _____ Vera P. Bull.

106.3 Complete the sentences with a preposition (*at/by/with*, etc.).

1. In tennis, you hit the ball _____ a racket.
2. It's cold today. Don't go out _____ a coat.
3. *Hamlet*, *Othello*, and *Macbeth* are plays _____ William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything _____ computers?
5. My grandmother died _____ the age of 98.
6. How long does it take to go from New York to Los Angeles _____ plane?
7. I didn't go to the football game, but I watched it _____ television.
8. My house is the one _____ the red door.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel _____ 200 miles an hour.
10. You can't get there _____ car. There's no road.
11. Can you give me some information _____ hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested _____ two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They're almost always _____ time.
14. What would you like to drink _____ your meal?
15. We traveled from Paris to Moscow _____ train.
16. The museum has some paintings _____ Rembrandt.

A

afraid of / good at, etc. (*adjective + preposition*)

Help! He's afraid of me.



I'm not very good at math.



I'm tired of my job.



afraid of . . .

angry/mad at somebody
angry/mad about something

different from . . . /
different than . . .

full of . . .

good at . . .
bad at . . .

interested in . . .

married to . . .

nice/kind of somebody to . . .
nice/kind to somebody

sorry about something
sorry for somebody

tired of . . .

- Are you afraid of dogs?
- Why are you mad at me? What did I do?
- Are you angry about last night?
(= something that happened last night)
- Lynn is very different from her sister.
or Lynn is very different than her sister.
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at math?
- Tina is very bad at writing letters.
- I'm not interested in sports.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.
- I'm sorry about your accident. Was anyone hurt?
- I feel sorry for them. They work hard, but they never have enough money.
- I'm tired of my job. I need a change.

B

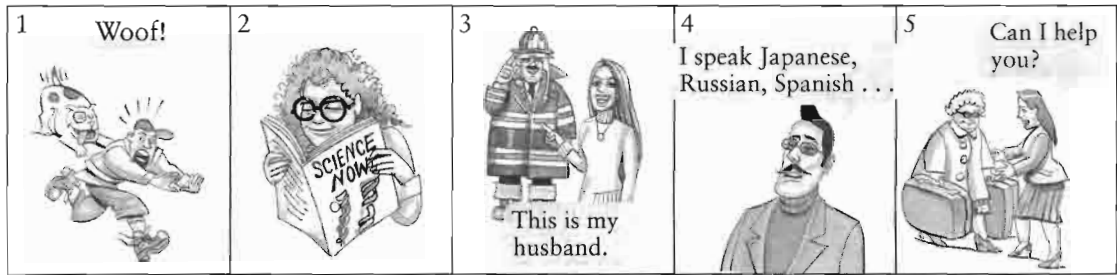
Preposition + -ing

After a preposition (at/with/for, etc.), a verb ends in -ing.

I'm not very good at	telling	stories.
Are you tired of	doing	the same thing every day?
Thank you for	helping	me.
Mark is thinking of	buying	a new car.
Tom left without	saying	goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)
After	doing	the housework, they went out.

Exercises

107.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (*of, in, etc.*).



1. He's afraid of dogs.
2. She's interested in science.
3. She's married to a firefighter.
4. He's very good at languages.
5. "Can I help you?" "Thanks, that's very nice of you."

107.2 Write the correct preposition (*of/for/about, etc.*).

1. I'm not interested in sports.
2. I'm not very good at sports.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very nice to me.
4. I'm sorry about your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't afraid of anything.
6. It was very nice of Julia to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different from life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested in politics?
9. I feel sorry for her, but I can't help her.
10. Chris was angry about what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They're full of books.
12. What's wrong? Are you mad at me?

107.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very *good at telling* _____ stories. (good / tell)
2. I wanted to go to the movies, but Paula wasn't _____. (interested / go)
3. Sue isn't very _____ up in the morning. (good / get)
4. Let's go! I'm _____. (tired / wait)
5. Sorry I'm late! _____ (thank you / wait)

107.4 Complete the sentences. Use *without -ing*.

1. (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) *Tom left without saying goodbye.*
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak) Sue walked _____.
3. (don't do anything / ask me first) Don't _____.
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door) I _____.

107.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use the words in parentheses ().

1. (interested) *I'm interested in sports.*
2. (afraid) I'm _____.
3. (not very good) I'm not _____.
4. (not interested) _____.
5. (tired) _____.

Listen to . . . , look at . . . , etc.
(Verb + Preposition)

A

ask somebody for . . .

- A man stopped me and asked me for money.

belong to . . .

- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)

happen to . . .

- I can't find my pen. What **happened to** it?

listen to . . .

- **Listen to** this music. It's great!

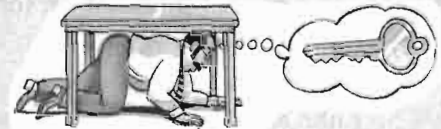
look at . . .

- She's **looking at** her watch.
- **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?



look for . . .

- He lost his key. He's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?



speak/talk to somebody about . . .

- Did you talk to Paul **about** the problem?
- (*on the phone*) Can I **speak to** Chris, please?

take care of . . .

- When Pat is at work, a friend of hers **takes care of** her children.
- Don't lose this book. **Take care of** it.

thank somebody for . . .

- **Thank you very much for** your help.

think about . . .
or think of . . .

- He never **thinks about** (*or of*) other people.
- Mark is **thinking of** (*or about*) buying a new car.

wait for . . .

- **Wait for** me! I'm almost ready.

B

write and call

write (to) somebody

- I never get letters. Nobody writes to me. (*or* Nobody writes me.)

call somebody (*no preposition*)

- I have to **call** my parents. (*not call to* . . .)

C

depend

We say **depend on** . . . :

- A: Do you like to eat in restaurants?
- B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not it depends of*)

You can say it **depends what/where/how**, etc., with or without **on**.

- A: Do you want to go out with us?
- B: It **depends where** you're going. (*or It depends on where you're going.*)

Exercises

108.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for etc.).



1. He's looking *at* _____ his watch.
2. He's listening _____ the radio.
3. They're waiting _____ a taxi.
4. Paul is talking _____ Tracy.
5. They're looking _____ a picture.
6. Sue is looking _____ Tom.

108.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for/about, etc.) if necessary.

1. Thank you very much *for* _____ your help.
2. This isn't my umbrella. It belongs _____ a friend of mine.
3. Who's going to take care _____ your dog while you're out of town?
4. (*on the phone*) Can I speak _____ Mr. Davis, please?
5. (*on the phone*) Thank you _____ calling. Goodbye.
6. Excuse me, I'm looking _____ Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
7. We're thinking _____ going to Australia next year.
8. We asked the waiter _____ tea, but he brought us coffee.
9. "Do you like to read books?" "It depends _____ the book."
10. John was talking, but nobody was listening _____ what he was saying.
11. I want to take your picture. Please look _____ the camera and smile.
12. We waited _____ Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
13. What happened _____ Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
14. Don't forget to call _____ your mother tonight.
15. He's alone all day. He never talks _____ anybody.
16. "How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?" "It depends _____ the room."
17. Kathy is thinking _____ changing jobs.
18. I looked _____ the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
19. When you're sick, you need somebody to take care _____ you.
20. Barry is looking _____ a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

108.3 Answer these questions with *It depends*

1. Do you want to go out with us? *It depends where you're going.*
2. Do you like to eat in restaurants? *It depends on the restaurant.*
3. Do you enjoy watching TV? It depends _____.
4. Can you do something for me? It _____.
5. Are you leaving town this weekend? _____.
6. Can you lend me some money? _____.

A *two-word verb* is a verb (go/look/be, etc.) + in/out/up/down, etc.

in



- Erin opened the door of the car and got in. (= into the car)
- I waited outside the house. I didn't go in.

out



- The car stopped and two women got out. (= out of the car)
- I went to the window and looked out.

on



- The bus came, and I got on.

off



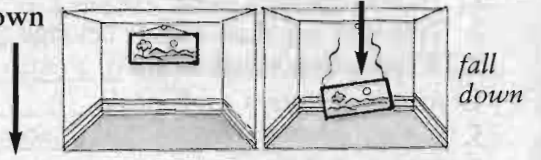
- Be careful! Don't fall off.

up



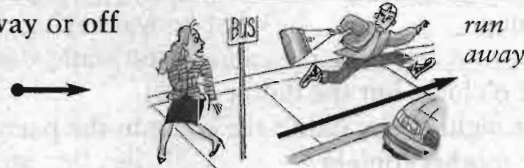
- He stood up and left the room.
- I usually get up early. (= get out of bed)
- We looked up at the stars.

down



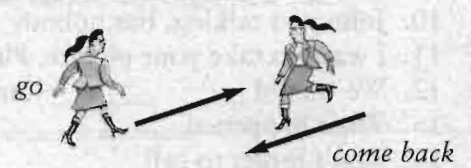
- Would you like to sit down?
- The picture fell down.
- Lie down on the floor.

away or off



- The thief ran away. (or . . . ran off)
- Erin got into the car and drove away. (or . . . drove off)

back



- We went out for dinner and then went back to our hotel.
- Go away and don't come back!

be/go away (= in/to another place)

- Erin has gone away for a few days.

be back

- Erin is away. She'll be back on Monday.

around



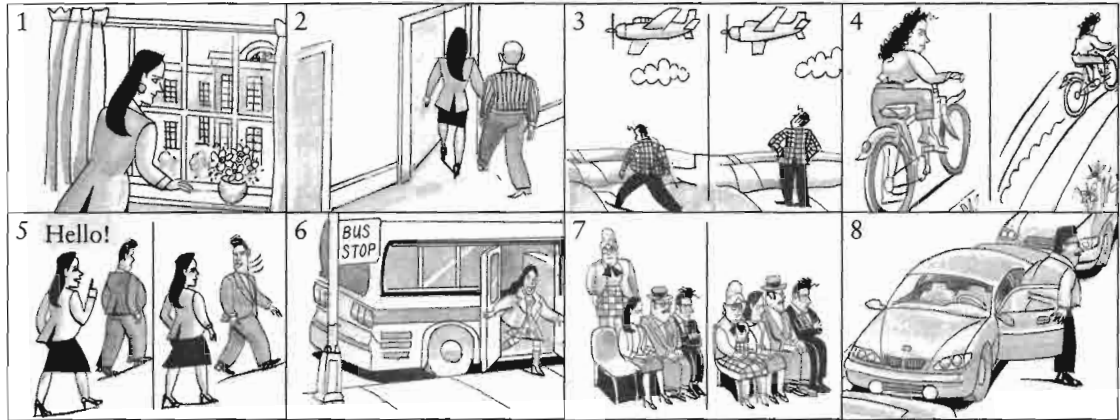
- I'm not sure what kind of car I want. I want to look around first.
- Somebody shouted my name, so I turned around.
- We went for a long walk. After six miles we turned around and went back.



Exercises

109.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the verbs + *in/out/up*, etc.

got got looked looked rode sat turned went



1. I went to the window and looked out.
2. The door was open, so we _____.
3. He heard a plane, so he _____.
4. She got on her bike and _____.
5. I said hello, and he _____.
6. The bus stopped, and she _____.
7. The seat was free, so she _____.
8. A car stopped, and a man _____.

109.2 Complete the sentences. Use *out/away/back*, etc.

1. "What happened to the picture on the wall?" "It fell down."
2. Please don't walk _____. Listen to me!
3. She heard a noise in back of her, so she turned _____.
4. I'm going _____ now to do some shopping. I'll be _____ at 5 o'clock.
5. I'm really tired. I'm going to lie _____ on the sofa for a few minutes.
6. The Hans don't know the city very well. They need to look _____ before buying a house.
7. Jim is from Utah. He lives in Boston now, but he wants to go _____ to Utah.
8. We don't have a key to the house, so we can't get _____.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get _____.
10. "When are you going _____?" "On the fifth. I'm coming _____ on the tenth."

109.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. If necessary, put the verb in the correct form. All these verbs (*wake up*, etc.) are in Appendix 6.

break	give	slow	take	work
get	hurry	speak	wake	

+

along	off	up
down	out	

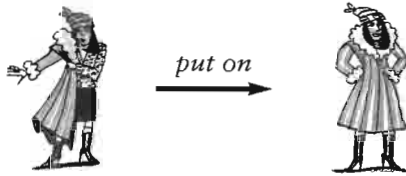
1. I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and wake up at nine o'clock the next morning.
2. The train _____ and finally stopped.
3. I tried to find a job, but I _____. It was impossible.
4. I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane _____.
5. It's difficult to hear you. Can you _____ a little?
6. This car isn't very good. It has _____ many times.
7. Ben has gained weight because he doesn't _____ any more.
8. _____, we have to leave. The movie starts in ten minutes.
9. Tony doesn't see his sister much. They don't _____ very well.

Put on your shoes and put your shoes on (Two-Word Verbs 2)

A

Sometimes a two-word verb (put on / take off, etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb object
put on your coat



You can say:
put on your coat
put your coat on

verb object
take off your shoes



You can say:
take off your shoes
take your shoes off

But *it/them* (*pronouns*) always go before *on/off*, etc.

put **it** on (*not* put on it)

take **them** off (*not* take off them)

- It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.
or . . . I **put** my coat on.
- Here's your coat. **Put it** on.

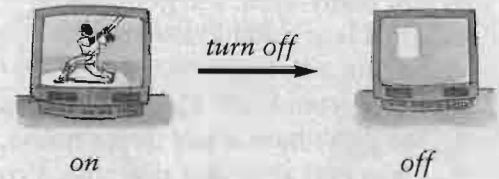
- I'm going to **take off** my shoes.
or . . . **take** my shoes off.
- Your shoes are dirty. **Take them** off.

B

More two-word verbs + object

turn on / turn off (lights, machines, faucets, etc.)

- It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.
or . . . I **turned** the light on.
- I don't want to watch this program.
You can **turn it** off.



pick up / put down

- Those are my keys on the floor.
Can you **pick them** up for me?
- I stopped reading and **put** my book down.
or . . . **put down** my book.



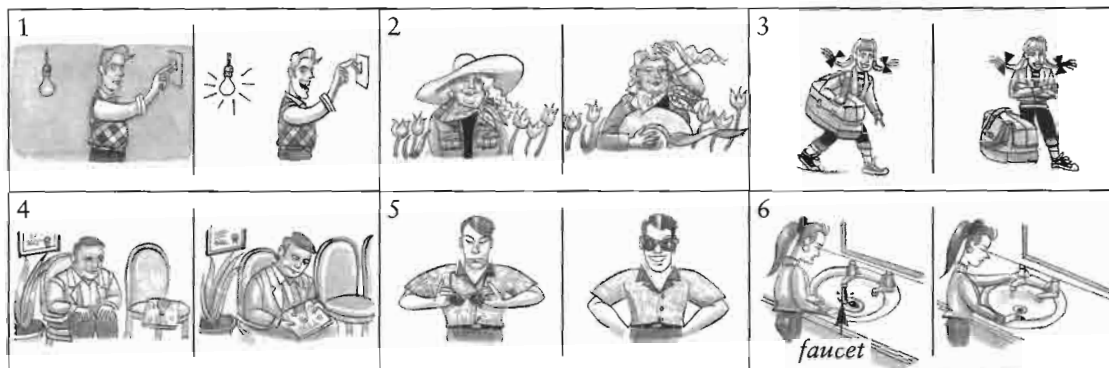
bring back / take back / give back / put back

- You can take my umbrella but please **bring it** back.
- I **took** my new sweater back to the store.
It was too small.
- I have Diane's keys. I have to **give them** back to her.
- I read the letter and then **put it** back in the envelope.



Exercises

110.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



1. He *turned on the light* . 4. He _____ .
 2. She _____ . 5. He _____ .
 3. She _____ . 6. She _____ .

110.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I turned on the TV. | <i>I turned the TV on.</i> | <i>I turned it on.</i> |
| 2. He put on his jacket. | He _____ . | He _____ . |
| 3. I _____ . | I gave the keys back. | _____ . |
| 4. She took off her hat. | _____ . | _____ . |
| 5. Put down your pens. | _____ . | _____ . |
| 6. _____ . | I turned the lights off. | _____ . |

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the list + *it/them*.

bring pick take ~~turn~~ turn (+ on/off/up/back)

- I wanted to watch something on television, so I *turned it on* _____ .
- My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to _____ to the store.
- Your gloves were on the floor, so I _____ and put them on the table.
- When I finished working on the computer, I _____ .
- Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to _____ .

110.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. These verbs are in Appendix 7.

your cigarette	ten houses	or	me	them	+	around	down	out	up
some shoes	a glass		it			away	on	over	

- They tore *ten houses down* OR *down ten houses* to build the new road.
- That music is very loud. Can you turn *it down* _____ ?
- I knocked _____ and broke it.
- If you don't know a word, you can look _____ in a dictionary.
- I want to keep these magazines. Please don't throw _____ .
- Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill _____ .
- I tried _____ at the store, but I didn't buy them.
- I visited the school. One of the teachers showed _____ .
- Mike loves skiing, but he had to give _____ when he hurt his leg.
- You're not allowed to smoke here. Please put _____ .

A

and but or so because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. *sentence B* The driver got out.
 The car stopped, **and** the driver got out.

B

and/but/or

<i>sentence A</i>		<i>sentence B</i>	
We stayed at home	and	(we)* watched television.	*We and she are not necessary here.
My sister is married	and	(she)* lives in London.	
He doesn't like her,	and	she doesn't like him.	
I bought a newspaper,	but	I didn't read it.	
It's a nice house,	but	it hasn't got a garage.	
Do you want to go out,	or	are you too tired?	

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** between the last two things.

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down to watch TV, **and** fell asleep.
- Amy is at work, Sue went shopping, **and** Chris is playing football.

C

so (the result of something)

<i>sentence A</i>		<i>sentence B</i>
It was very hot,	so	we opened the window.
They had some free time,	so	they went for a drive.
I don't like to travel,	so	I haven't been to many places.

D

because (the reason for something)

<i>sentence A</i>		<i>sentence B</i>
We opened the window	because	it was very hot.
They didn't go for a drive	because	they didn't have time.
Lisa is hungry	because	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning. We use a comma.

- **Because they didn't have time,** they didn't go for a drive.

E

In these examples there is more than one conjunction.

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I love New York, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

111.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use *and/but/or*.

~~I stayed at home.~~
~~I bought a newspaper.~~
~~I went to the window.~~
~~I wanted to call you.~~
~~I jumped into the river.~~
~~I usually drive to work.~~
~~Do you want me to come with you?~~

I didn't have your number.
 Should I wait here?
~~I didn't read it.~~
 I took the bus this morning.
~~I watched television.~~
 I swam to the other side.
 I looked out.

1. *I stayed at home and watched television.*
2. *I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.*
3. I _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

111.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *and/but/so/because*.



1. It was very hot, *so he opened the window*
2. They didn't play tennis _____
3. They went to the museum, _____
4. Bill wasn't hungry, _____
5. Amy was late _____
6. Sue said _____

111.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use the words in parentheses ().

1. (and) *Last night I stayed home and studied.*
2. (because) *I went to bed very early because I was tired.*
3. (but) _____
4. (and) _____
5. (so) _____
6. (because) _____

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + **it was raining**

The **when** part can be first or second.

- { **When I went out**, it was raining.
It was raining **when I went out**.

We use a comma (,) if the **when** part is first.

- { **When you're tired**, don't drive.
Don't drive **when you're tired**.
- { Joy was very happy **when she passed the exam**.
When Joy passed the exam, she was very happy.



We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**.

- { Always look both ways **before** you cross the street.
Before you cross the street, always look both ways.
- { **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- { He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

B

When I am . . . / When I go . . . , etc.

Next week Kim is going to New York. She has a friend, Lily, who lives in New York, but Lily is also going away – to Mexico. So they won't see each other in New York.

Lily **will be** in Mexico **when** Kim is in New York.

The time is *future* (next week), but we say: . . . **when** Kim is in New York. (*not* when Kim will be)



LILY

KIM

We use the *present* (I am / I go, etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**.

- **When I get home tonight**, I'm going to take a shower. (*not* When I will get home)
- I can't talk now. I'll talk to you later **when I have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**.

- Please close the windows **before** you go out. (*not* before you will go)
- Julia is going to stay in our apartment **while** we are away. (*not* while we will be)
- I'll wait here **until** you come back. (*not* until you will come back)

Exercises

112.1 Write sentences beginning with *when*. Choose from the boxes.

When +	I went out I'm tired I called her I go on vacation the program was over I got to the hotel	+	I turned off the TV I always go to the same place there were no rooms it was raining there was no answer I like to watch TV
--------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. *When I went out, it was raining.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

112.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house	before they came here	when they heard the news
before they crossed the street	while they were away	they didn't believe me
they went to live in New Zealand		

1. They looked both ways *before they crossed the street*.
2. They were very surprised _____.
3. After they got married, _____.
4. The letter arrived _____.
5. Where did they live _____?
6. While they were asleep, _____.
7. When I told them the news, _____.

112.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

1. ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (*I'll stay* and *you come* are right.)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / P'll finish my work.
3. We should do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Julia is moving soon. I'm / P'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in Toronto again.
7. When I come / P'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / P'll bring your CDs.
8. I'm going to Quebec next week. I hope to see Sam while I'm / P'll be there.
9. "I need your address." "OK, I give / P'll give it to you before I go / P'll go."

112.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before *you go out* _____?
2. What are you going to do when _____?
3. When I have more time, _____.
4. I'll wait for you while _____.
5. When I start my new job, _____.
6. Will you be here when _____?

A



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle.

If at the beginning

- If we take the bus, it will be cheaper.
- If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
- If you're hungry, have something to eat.
- If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

- It will be cheaper if we take the bus.
- You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.
- I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
- Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if part of the sentence alone.

- "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, if I can get a ticket."

B

if you see Amy tomorrow, etc.

After if, we use the present (*not* will). We say if you see . . . (*not* if you will see).

- If you see Amy tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- If I'm late tonight, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
- What should we do if it rains? (*not* if it will rain)
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay home.

C

if and when

if I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. If I go out, I'll close the windows.

when I go out = I'm going out (for sure)

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the windows.
- When I get home tonight, I'm going to take a shower.
- If I'm late tomorrow, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)



Exercises

113.1 Write sentences beginning with *If*. Choose from the boxes.

If +	you don't hurry you pass the driving test you fail the driving test you don't want this magazine you want those pictures you're busy now you're hungry you need money	+	we can have lunch now you can have them I can lend you some you'll get your license you'll be late I'll throw it away we can talk later you can take it again
------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. *If you don't hurry, you'll be late.* _____
2. If you pass _____
3. If _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

113.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / ~~I'll be~~ late tonight, don't wait for me. (*I'm* is right.)
2. Will you write to me if I give / I'll give you my address?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the afternoon.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Mark and Julia get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

113.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if *I can get a ticket* _____
2. If you don't hurry *you'll miss the train* _____
3. I don't want to go swimming if _____
4. If you go to bed early tonight, _____
5. Turn the television off if _____
6. Lisa won't pass her driving test if _____
7. If I have time tomorrow, _____
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if _____

113.4 Write *if* or *when*.

1. *If* _____ I'm late tomorrow, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going shopping now. _____ I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm thinking of going to see Tim. _____ I go, will you come with me?
4. _____ you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay home.
5. Do you mind _____ I close the window?
6. John is still in high school. _____ he finishes, he wants to go to college.
7. Do you want to go on a picnic tomorrow _____ the weather is good?
8. We're going to Oslo tomorrow. We're going to look for a hotel _____ we get there. I don't know what we'll do _____ we don't find a room.

A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one. He doesn't have enough money.

If he had the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not past*. If he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).

If I had the money . . .



If	I	had/knew/went (etc.) . . . ,	I	buy . . .
	you	didn't have/know/go (etc.) . . . ,	you	would(n't) be . . .
	it	could have/know/go (etc.) . . . ,	it	could(n't) have . . .
	they, etc.	was/were . . . ,	they, etc.	go . . .

I'd / she'd / they'd, etc. = I would / she would / they would, etc.

- I don't know the answer. If I **knew** the answer, I'd tell you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd get wet if we **went** out.
- Ellie lives in a city. She **wouldn't** be happy if she **lived** in the country.
- If you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you have a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd **help** you if I **could**. (but I can't)
- If we **had** a car, we **could** travel more. (but we don't have a car)

B

if I were/was . . .

You can say if (I/he/she/it) **were or was** . . .

- It's cold. If I **were** you, I'd put a coat on. (or If I **was** you . . .)
- It's not a good restaurant. I **wouldn't** eat there if I **were** you. (or . . . if I **was** you)
- I'd be happier if the weather **were** (or **was**) nicer.

I wouldn't go out if I were you.



C

Compare:

if I have / if it is, etc.

- I want to go and see Judy.
If I **have** time, I **will go** today.
(= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- I like that jacket.
I'll **buy** it if it **isn't** too expensive.
(= maybe it is not too expensive)
- I'll **help** you if I **can**. (= maybe I can help)

if I had / if it was, etc.

- I want to go and see Judy.
If I **had** time, I **would go** today.
(= I don't have time today, so I won't go)
- I like that jacket, but it's very expensive.
I'd **buy** it if it **weren't** so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- I'd **help** you if I **could**, but I can't.

114.1 Complete the sentences.

- I don't know the answer. If I *knew* _____ the answer, I'd tell you.
- I have a car. I couldn't travel much if I *didn't have* _____ a car.
- I don't want to go out. If I _____ to go out, I'd go.
- We don't have a key. If we _____ a key, we could get into the house.
- I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I _____ hungry.
- Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she _____ it.
- You can't drive. If you _____ drive, I would lend you my car.
- He speaks too fast. I could understand him better if he _____ more slowly.
- I have a lot to do today. If I _____ so much to do, we could go out.

114.2 Write the verb in the correct form.

- If *he had* _____ the money, he would buy a fast car. (he / have)
- If I wanted to learn Chinese, _____ to China. (I / go)
- I haven't told Joy what happened. She'd be angry if _____. (she / know)
- If _____ a map, I could show you where I live. (we / have)
- What would you do if _____ a lot of money? (you / win)
- It's not a very good hotel. _____ there if I were you. (I / not / stay)
- If _____ closer to Miami, we would go there more often. (we / live)
- I'm sorry you have to go. _____ nice if you had more time. (it / be)
- I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if _____ better. (the salary / be)
- I don't understand cars. If my car broke down, _____ what to do. (I / not / know)
- If you could change one thing in the world, what _____? (you / change)

114.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house	it (be) a little cheaper	I (watch) it
we (buy) a bigger house	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored
we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner	

- I'd buy that jacket if *it were a little cheaper* _____.
- If there was a good film on TV tonight, _____.
- This room would be nicer if _____.
- If there weren't so much traffic, _____.
- Life would be boring if _____.
- If I had nothing to do, _____.
- We could invite all our friends to stay if _____.
- If we had more money, _____.

114.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

- I'd go to the dentist if *I had a toothache* _____.
- If I could go anywhere in the world, _____.
- I wouldn't be very happy if _____.
- I'd buy a house if _____.
- If I saw an accident in the street, _____.
- The world would be a better place if _____.

A

I can speak six languages.



I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages. 2 sentences

I met a woman **who** can speak six languages. 1 sentence



Jim was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him. 2 sentences

Jim was wearing a hat **that** was too big for him. } 1 sentence

Jim was wearing a hat **or** **which** was too big for him. }

B

Who is for people (not things).

A thief is a person	who steals things.	
Do you know anybody	who can play the piano?	
The man	who called	didn't give his name.
The people	who work in the office	are very friendly.

C

That is for things or people.

An airplane is a machine	that flies.	
Amy lives in a house	that is 100 years old.	
The people	that work in the office	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

D

Which is for things (not people).

An airplane is a machine	which flies. (<i>not</i> a machine who . . .)
Amy lives in a house	which is 100 years old.

Do not use **which** for people.

- Do you know **the woman who** sang at the party? (*not* the woman which . . .)

Exercises

115.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A . . . *is a person who* Use a dictionary if necessary.

a thief	a dentist
a butcher	a fool
a musician	a genius
a patient	a liar

doesn't tell the truth	is seeing a doctor
takes care of your teeth	steals things
is very intelligent	does stupid things
plays music	sells meat

- A thief is a person who steals things.*
- A butcher is a person _____.
- A musician _____.
- _____.
- _____.
- _____.
- _____.
- _____.

115.2 Make one sentence from two.

- (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
The man who phoned didn't give his name.
- (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
The woman _____ a yellow dress.
- (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
Most of the students _____.
- (A police officer stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
The _____.

115.3 Write *who* or *which*.

- I met a woman *who* _____ can speak six languages.
- What's the name of the woman _____ lives next door?
- What's the name of the river _____ flows through the town?
- Where is the picture _____ was hanging on the wall?
- Do you know anybody _____ wants to buy a car?
- You always ask questions _____ are difficult to answer.
- I have a friend _____ is very good at repairing cars.
- I think everybody _____ went to the party enjoyed it a lot.
- Why does he always wear clothes _____ are too small for him?

115.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

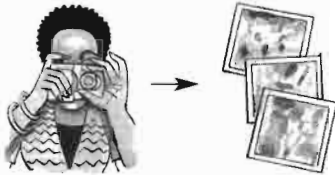
- A thief is a person which steals things. *a person who steals*
- An airplane is a machine that flies. *OK*
- A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. _____
- Have you seen the money that was on the table? _____
- I don't like people which never stop talking. _____
- I know somebody that can help you. _____
- I know somebody who works in that store. _____
- Correct the sentences who are wrong. _____

A



The man is carrying a bag. }
It's very heavy. } 2 sentences

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy. 1 sentence



Kim took some pictures. }
Did you see them? } 2 sentences

Did you see the pictures (that) Kim took? 1 sentence

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying . . . or The bag he is carrying . . . (with or without **that**)
- . . . the pictures **that** Kim took? or . . . the pictures Kim took?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the *object*.

subject *verb* *object*

the man	was carrying	a bag	→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
Kim	took	some pictures	→ the pictures (that) Kim took
you	wanted	the book	→ the book (that) you wanted
we	met	some people	→ the people (who) we met

- Did you find the book you wanted? or . . . the book **that** you wanted?
- The people we met were very nice. or The people **who** we met . . .
- Everything I said was true. or Everything **that** I said . . .

Note that we say:

- The movie we saw was very good. (*not* The movie we saw it was . . .)

B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (to/in/at, etc.) after the verb.

Erica is talking to a man.	→ Do you know the man Erica is talking to?
We stayed at a hotel.	→ The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
I told you about some books.	→ These are the books I told you about. (<i>not</i> the books I told you about them)

You can say (a place) **where**

- The hotel **where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at . . .)

C

You must use **that/who/which** when it is the *subject* (see Unit 115).

- I met a woman **who** can speak six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jim was wearing a hat **that** was too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

Exercises

116.1 Make one sentence from two.

- (Kim took some pictures. Did you see them?)
Did you see the pictures Kim took?
- (You gave me a pen. I lost it.)
I lost the _____.
- (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
I like the _____.
- (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
Where are the _____?
- (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I _____.
- (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How _____?

116.2 Make one sentence from two.

- (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
- (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
The _____.
- (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
The shoes _____.
- (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
The _____.

116.3 Complete the sentences. Use the information in the box.

I looked at a map	I was sitting on a chair	you were looking for some keys
they live in a house	we were waiting for a bus	Nicole is dancing with a man
you stayed at a hotel	you spoke to some people	

- What's the name of *the hotel you stayed at* _____?
- Who are the people _____?
- Did you find the _____?
- The _____ is too small for them.
- The _____ wasn't very clear.
- I fell off _____.
- _____ was very late.
- Who is _____?

116.4 Read the situations and complete the questions. Use *where*.

- John stayed at a hotel. You ask him: Did you like *the hotel where you stayed* _____?
- Sue had dinner at a restaurant. You ask her:
What's the name of the restaurant _____?
- Sarah lives in a town. You ask her:
Do you like _____?
- Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
How big is _____?

APPENDIX 2: List of Irregular Verbs

See Unit 25.

<i>base form</i>	<i>simple past</i>	<i>past participle</i>	<i>base form</i>	<i>simple past</i>	<i>past participle</i>
be	was/were	been	lie	lay	lain
beat	beat	beaten	light	lit	lit
become	became	become	lose	lost	lost
begin	began	begun	make	made	made
bite	bit	bitten	mean	meant	meant
blow	blew	blown	meet	met	met
break	broke	broken	pay	paid	paid
bring	brought	brought	put	put	put
build	built	built	quit	quit	quit
buy	bought	bought	read	read*	read*
catch	caught	caught	ride	rode	ridden
choose	chose	chosen	ring	rang	rung
come	came	come	rise	rose	risen
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
cut	cut	cut	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
drink	drank	drunk	send	sent	sent
drive	drove	driven	shine	shone	shone
eat	ate	eaten	shoot	shot	shot
fall	fell	fallen	show	showed	shown/showed
feel	felt	felt	shut	shut	shut
fight	fought	fought	sing	sang	sung
find	found	found	sit	sat	sat
fly	flew	flown	sleep	slept	slept
forget	forgot	forgotten	speak	spoke	spoken
get	got	gotten	spend	spent	spent
give	gave	given	stand	stood	stood
go	went	gone	steal	stole	stolen
grow	grew	grown	swim	swam	swum
hang	hung	hung	take	took	taken
have	had	had	teach	taught	taught
hear	heard	heard	tear	tore	torn
hide	hid	hidden	tell	told	told
hit	hit	hit	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
hurt	hurt	hurt	understand	understood	understood
keep	kept	kept	wake	woke	woken
know	knew	known	wear	wore	worn
leave	left	left	win	won	won
lend	lent	lent	write	wrote	written
let	let	let			

*pronounced [red]

APPENDIX 3: Irregular Verbs in Groups

Simple past and past participle are the same.

1. cost → cost	let → let
cut → cut	put → put
hit → hit	quit → quit
hurt → hurt	shut → shut

2. lend → lent	lose → lost
send → sent	shoot → shot
spend → spent	
build → built	light → lit
	sit → sat

keep → kept	feel → felt
sleep → slept	leave → left
	meet → met
	dream → dreamed
	or dreamt
	mean → meant

3. bring → brought
buy → bought
fight → fought
think → thought

catch → caught
teach → taught

4. sell → sold
tell → told

find → found
have → had
hear → heard
hold → held
read → read*
say → said
*pronounced [red]

pay → paid
make → made

stand → stood
understand → understood

Simple past and past participle are different.

1. break → broke	broken
choose → chose	chosen
speak → spoke	spoken
steal → stole	stolen
wake → woke	woken

2. drive → drove	driven
ride → rode	ridden
rise → rose	risen
write → wrote	written

beat → beat	beaten
bite → bit	bitten
hide → hid	hidden

3. eat → ate	eaten
fall → fell	fallen
forget → forgot	forgotten
get → got	gotten
give → gave	given
see → saw	seen
take → took	taken

4. blow → blew	blown
grow → grew	grown
know → knew	known
throw → threw	thrown
fly → flew	flown

draw → drew	drawn
-------------	-------

show → showed	shown
---------------	-------

5. begin → began	begun
drink → drank	drunk
swim → swam	swum

ring → rang	rung
sing → sang	sung

run → ran	run
-----------	-----

6. come → came	come
become → became	become

APPENDIX 4: Short Forms (*he's/I'd/don't*, etc.)

- 4.1** In spoken English, we usually pronounce *I am* as one word. The short form (*I'm*) is a way of writing this.

I am → I'm	■ I'm feeling tired this morning.
it is → it's	■ "Do you like this jacket?" "Yes, it's very nice."
they have → they've	■ "Where are your friends?" "They've gone home."

When we write short forms, we use an *apostrophe* (').

I am → *I'm* *he is* → *he's* *you have* → *you've* *she will* → *she'll*

- 4.2** We use 'm / 's / 're / 've / 'd / 'll with *I/he/she*, etc.

	<i>I</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>we</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>they</i>
am → 'm	I'm						
is → 's		he's	she's	it's			
are → 're					we're	you're	they're
have → 've	I've				we've	you've	they've
has → 's		he's	she's	it's			
had → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will → 'll	I'll	he'll	she'll		we'll	you'll	they'll
would → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- I've lost your address.
- We'll probably go out tonight.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = *is* or *has*

- She's going out tonight. (*she's going* = *she is going*)
- She's gone out. (*she's gone* = *she has gone*)

'd = *would* or *had*

- A: What would you like to eat?
B: I'd like a salad, please. (*I'd like* = *I would like*)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (*I'd lost* = *I had lost*)

Do not use 'm / 's / 're / 've / 'd / 'll at the end of a sentence (see Unit 41).

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I am." (*not* Yes, I'm)
- She isn't tired, but he is. (*not* he's)

- 4.3** We use short forms with *I/you/he/she*, etc., but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too.

- Who's your favorite singer? (= *who is*)
- What's the time? (= *what is*)
- There's a big tree in the yard. (= *there is*)
- My sister's working in London. (= *my sister is working*)
- Paul's gone out. (= *Paul has gone out*)
- What color's your car? (= *What color is your car?*)

4.4 Negative short forms (see Unit 44)

isn't (= is not)	don't (= do not)	hasn't (= has not)
aren't (= are not)	doesn't (= does not)	haven't (= have not)
wasn't (= was not)	didn't (= did not)	hadn't (= had not)
weren't (= were not)		
can't (= cannot)	won't (= will not)	mustn't (= must not)
couldn't (= could not)	wouldn't (= would not)	shouldn't (= should not)

- We went to her house but she **wasn't** at home.
- "Where's David?" "I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him."
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s) can mean different things.

1. 's = is or has (see section 4.2 of this appendix)
2. let's = let us (see Unit 37)
 - The weather is nice. **Let's** go out. (= Let us go out.)
3. Kate's camera (= her camera) / my brother's car (= his car) / the manager's office (= his/her office), etc. (see Unit 65)

Compare:

- Kate's camera was very expensive. (Kate's camera = her camera)
- Kate's a very good photographer. (Kate's = Kate is)
- Kate's got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate has got)

APPENDIX 5: Spelling

5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches, etc.)

noun + s (plural) (see Unit 67)

bird → birds

mistake → mistakes

hotel → hotels

verb + s (he/she/it -s) (see Unit 5)

think → thinks

live → lives

remember → remembers

But:

+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x

bus → buses

pass → passes

address → addresses

dish → dishes

wash → washes

finish → finishes

watch → watches

teach → teaches

sandwich → sandwiches

box → boxes

also

potato → potatoes

tomato → tomatoes

do → does

go → goes

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves

knife → knives

but roof → roofs

5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied, etc.)

-y → -ies

study → studies (*not* studys) family → families (*not* familys)

story → stories

city → cities

baby → babies

try → tries

marry → marries

fly → flies

-y → -ied (see Unit 11)

study → studied (*not* studied)

try → tried

marry → married

copy → copied

-y → -ier / -iest (see Units 88 and 91)

easy → easier/easiest (*not* easyer/easyest)

happy → happier/happiest lucky → luckier/luckiest

heavy → heavier/heaviest funny → funnier/funniest

-y → -ily (see Unit 87)

easy → easily (*not* easyly)

happy → happily

lucky → luckily

heavy → heavily

Y does not change to i if the ending is -ay / -ey / -oy / -uy.

holiday → holidays (*not* holidais)

enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed

stay → stays/stayed

buy → buys

key → keys

but

say → said

pay → paid (*irregular verbs*)

5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive, etc.) → ~~x~~ing
 make → making write → writing come → coming dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie → -ying
 lie → lying die → dying tie → tying

5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger, etc.

Vowels and consonants

Vowel letters: a e i o u

Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*, for example, stop, big, get. Before -ing / -ed / -er / -est, the consonant at the end (-p / -g / -t, etc.) is “doubled” (-pp- / -gg- / -tt-, etc.). For example:

V+C					
stop	ST O P	p → pp	stopping	stopped	V = vowel C = consonant
run	R U N	n → nn	running		
get	G E T	t → tt	getting		
swim	SW I M	m → mm	swimming		
big	B I G	g → gg	bigger	biggest	
hot	H O T	t → tt	hotter	hottest	
thin	TH I N	n → nn	thinner	thinnest	

The letters are not doubled:

- (1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C)

C+C			
help	HE L P	helping	helped
work	WO R K	working	worked
fast	FA S T	faster	fastest

- (2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C)

V+V+C			
need	N E E D	needing	needed
wait	W A I T	waiting	waited
cheap	CH E A P	cheaper	cheapest

- (3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed

<i>stress</i>			
happen	HAP-pen	→	happening/happened (<i>not</i> happenned)
visit	VIS-it	→	visiting/visited
remember	re-MEM-ber	→	remembering/remembered
<i>but</i>	prefer	pre-FER (<i>stress at the end</i>)	→ preferring/preferred
	begin	be-GIN (<i>stress at the end</i>)	→ beginning

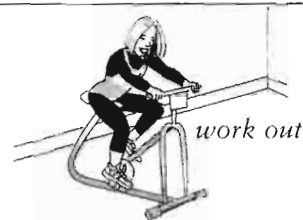
- (4) if the word ends in -y or -w (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)
 enjoy/enjoying/enjoyed snow/snowing/snowed few/fewer/fewest

APPENDIX 6: Two-Word Verbs (*look out / take off, etc.*)

This is a list of some important two-word verbs (see Unit 109).

out **look out / watch out** = be careful
 ■ **Look out!** There's a car coming!

work out = exercise (to become stronger or more fit)
 ■ Sarah **works out** at the gym two or three times a week.



on **come on** = be quick / hurry
 ■ **Come on!** Everybody is waiting for you.

go on = continue
 ■ I'm sorry I interrupted you. **Go on.** (= continue what you were saying)
 ■ How long will my cold **go on**, Doctor?

keep on = continue (talking, etc.)
 ■ I asked them to be quiet, but they **kept on** talking.

off **take off** = leave the ground (for airplanes)
 ■ The plane **took off** 20 minutes late but landed on time.

take off



up **wake up** = stop sleeping
 ■ I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.

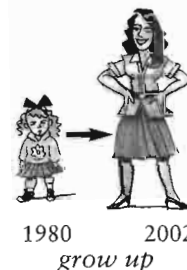
speak up = speak more loudly
 ■ I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

hurry up = do something more quickly
 ■ **Hurry up!** We haven't got much time.

clean up = make neat or clean
 ■ After the party, it took two hours to **clean up**.

grow up = become an adult
 ■ What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

give up = stop trying
 ■ I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**.



down **slow down** = go more slowly
 ■ You're driving too fast. **Slow down!**

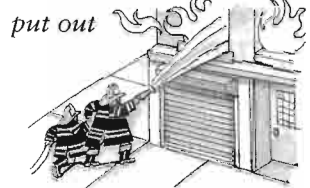
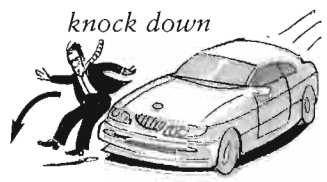

break down = stop working (for cars/machines, etc.)
 ■ Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.



along **get along** = be together without problems
 ■ Do you like living with Mike? Do you two **get along**?
 ■ Sam doesn't visit his parents often. He doesn't **get along** with his father.

APPENDIX 7: Two-Word Verbs + Object (*put out a fire / try on clothes, etc.*)

This is a list of some important two-word verbs + object (see Unit 110).

out	put out (a fire / a cigarette) ■ The fire department arrived and put the fire out .	
	cross out (a mistake / a word, etc.) ■ If you make a mistake, cross it out .	
	fill out (a form) = complete ■ Can you fill out this form , please?	
on	try on (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you ■ (<i>in a store</i>) Where can I try these pants on ?	
up	give up (something) = stop doing/having something ■ Tom's doctor told him he had to give up smoking . (= stop smoking) ■ Sheila gave up her job when her baby was born.	
	call up = call on the telephone ■ Sue called me up last night. <i>or</i> Sue called me last night. (<i>without up</i>)	
	look up (a word in a dictionary, etc.) ■ I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up .	
	turn up = make louder (TV, radio, music, etc.) ■ Can you turn the radio up ? I can't hear it.	
	wake up = make someone stop sleeping ■ The baby just fell asleep. Try to be quiet so you don't wake her up .	
	down	tear down (a building) = demolish ■ They are going to tear down the school and build a new one.
	knock down = make (somebody) fall ■ A man was knocked down by the car.	
	turn down = make quieter (TV, radio, music, etc.) ■ The music is too loud. Can you turn it down ?	
	back	
away	throw away (things you don't want) ■ These apples are bad. Shall I throw them away ? ■ Don't throw away that picture . I want it.	
	put away = put something in the place where you usually keep it ■ After they finished playing, the children put their toys away .	
over	knock over (a cup / a glass, etc.) ■ Be careful! Don't knock your cup over .	
around	show (somebody) around = take somebody on a tour of a place ■ We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us around .	

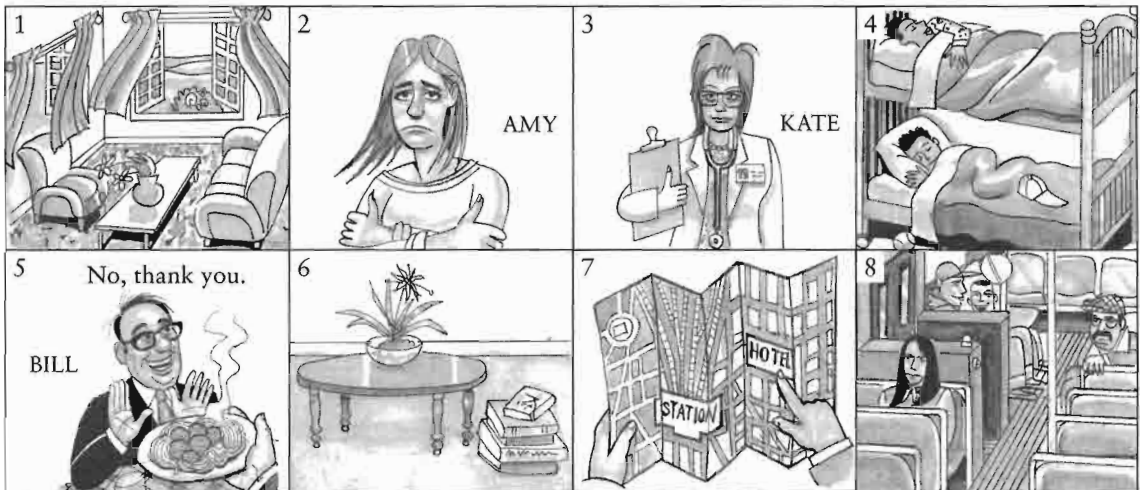
Additional Exercises

Exercises 1–2	<i>Am/Is/are</i>	Units 1–2
Exercise 3	Present Continuous	Units 3–4
Exercise 4	Simple Present	Units 5–7
Exercises 5–7	<i>Am/Is/are</i> , Simple Present, <i>have / have got</i>	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
Exercises 8–9	Present Continuous and Simple Present	Units 3–8
Exercises 10–13	<i>Was/were</i> and Simple Past	Units 10–12
Exercise 14	Simple Past and Past Continuous	Units 11–14
Exercise 15	Present and Past	Units 3–14
Exercises 16–18	Present Perfect	Units 16–20
Exercises 19–22	Present Perfect and Simple Past	Units 16–21
Exercise 23	Present, Past, and Present Perfect	Units 3–21
Exercises 24–27	Passive	Units 22–23
Exercise 28	Future	Units 26–29
Exercise 29	Past, Present and Future	Units 3–21, 26–29
Exercise 30	<i>-ing</i> and <i>to . . .</i>	Units 52–56, 100, 107
Exercises 31–32	<i>A</i> and <i>the</i>	Units 66, 70–74
Exercise 33	Prepositions	Units 98–103, 106

Am/Is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + *is/Isn't/are/aren't*.



The windows
Amy
Kate
The children
Bill
The books
The hotel
The bus

a doctor
asleep
crowded
happy
hungry
near the station
on the table
open

- The windows are open.*
- Amy isn't happy.*
- Kate _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

2 Complete the sentences.

1. "Are you hungry?" "No, but I'm thirsty."
2. "How are your parents?" "They're fine."
3. "Is Lisa at home?" "No, _____ at work."
4. "_____ my keys?" "In the kitchen."
5. Where is John from? _____ American or Canadian?
6. _____ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees Celsius.
7. "Are you a teacher?" "No, _____ a student."
8. "_____ your umbrella?" "Green."
9. Where's your car? _____ in the parking lot?
10. "_____ tired?" "No, I'm fine."
11. "_____ these oranges?" "Seventy-five cents each."

Present Continuous (I'm working / are you working?, etc.)

Units 3-4

3 Write sentences. Use the words in parentheses ().

1. A: Where are your parents?
B: They're watching TV. (they / watch / TV)
2. A: Paula is going out.
B: Where's she going? (where / she / go?)
3. A: Where's David?
B: _____ (he / take / a bath)
4. A: _____ (the children / play?)
B: No, they're asleep.
5. A: _____ (it / rain?)
B: No, not any more.
6. A: Where are Sue and Steve?
B: _____ (they / come / now)
7. A: _____ (why / you / stand / here?)
B: _____ (I / wait / for somebody)

Simple Present (I work / she doesn't work / do you work?, etc.)

Units 5-7

4 Complete the sentences. Use the simple present.


1. Sue always gets to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2. We don't watch TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3. How often do you wash your hair? (you / wash)
4. I want to go to the movies, but _____ to go. (Chris / not / want)
5. _____ to go out tonight? (you / want)
6. _____ near here? (Amy / live)
7. _____ a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8. I enjoy traveling, but _____ very much. (I / not / travel)
9. What time _____ in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10. My parents are usually home in the evening.
_____ very often. (they / not / go out)
11. _____ work at five o'clock. (Adam / always / leave)
12. A: What _____ ? (Kim / do)
B: _____ in a hotel. (she / work)

5 Read the questions and Claire's answers. Write sentences about Claire.


CLAIRE

Are you married?	No.		1. <i>She isn't married.</i>
Do you live in Toronto?	Yes.		2. <i>She lives in Toronto.</i>
Are you a student?	Yes.		3. _____
Do you have a car?	No.		4. _____
Do you go out a lot?	Yes.		5. _____
Do you have a lot of friends?	Yes.		6. _____
Do you like Toronto?	No.		7. _____
Do you like to dance?	Yes.		8. _____
Are you interested in sports?	No.		9. _____


6 Complete the questions.

1. What's your name _____ ?
_____ married?
Where _____ ?
_____ any children?
How _____ ? Brian.
Yes, I am.
On State Street.
Yes, a daughter.
She's three. 

2. _____

_____ your job?
_____ a car?
_____ to work? I'm 29.
I work in a supermarket.
No, I hate it.
Yes, I do.
No, I usually take the bus. 










3. Who is this man?

_____ in New York?  That's my brother.
Alex.
He's a travel agent.
No, Los Angeles.

7 Write sentences with these words. All of the sentences are present.

1. (Sarah often / tennis) *Sarah often plays tennis.*
2. (they / a new car) *They have a new car. OR They've got a new car.*
3. (my shoes / dirty) *My shoes are dirty.*
4. (Sonia / 32 years old) Sonia _____
5. (he / six sisters) _____
6. (we often / TV at night) _____
7. (Amy never / a hat) _____
8. (my car / a flat tire) _____
9. (these flowers / beautiful) _____
10. (Mary / German very well) _____

8 Complete the sentences.

<p>1 (I / work) Please be quiet. <i>I'm working.</i></p> 	<p>2 (you / often go) <i>Do you often go</i> to the movies?</p> 	<p>3 (you / cook) What _____ ?</p> 
<p>4 (play) Roy _____ the piano very well.</p> 	<p>5 (I / leave) _____ now. Good night.</p> 	<p>6 (it / rain) Can I take this umbrella?</p> 
<p>7 (I / not / watch) _____ TV very much.</p> 	<p>8 (we / look) Excuse me, _____ for the museum.</p> 	<p>9 (you / pronounce) What's this word? How _____ it?</p> 

9 Which is right?

1. "Are you speaking / Do you speak English?" "Yes, a little." (*Do you speak* is right.)
2. Sometimes we're going / we go away on weekends.
3. It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. (*You meet Amy in the street.*) Hello, Amy. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you taking / do you take a vacation?
6. Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
7. I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. "Where are Ed and Lee?" "They're watching / They watch TV in the living room."
9. Beth is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn't home right now. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12. "Would you like some tea?" "No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea."

10 Complete the sentences. Use only one word.

- I got up early and *took* _____ a shower.
- Tom was tired last night, so he _____ to bed early.
- I _____ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
- Kate got married when she _____ 23.
- Beth is learning to drive. She _____ her first lesson yesterday.
- "I've got a new job." "Yes, I know. David _____ me."
- "Where did you buy that book?" "It was a present. Andy _____ it to me."
- We _____ hungry, so we had something to eat.
- "Did you enjoy the movie?" "Yes, I did. I _____ it was very good."
- "Did Ed come to your party?" "No, I _____ him, but he didn't come."

11 Look at the questions and Joe's answers. Write about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child . . .

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Were you tall? | No. |
| Did you like school? | Yes. |
| Were you good at sports? | Yes. |
| Did you play basketball? | Yes. |
| Did you work hard in school? | No. |
| Did you have a lot of friends? | Yes. |
| Did you have a bicycle? | No. |
| Were you a quiet child? | No. |



JOE

- He wasn't tall.*
- He liked school.*
- He _____.
- _____.
- _____.
- _____.
- _____.
- _____.

12 Complete the questions.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Did you have</i> _____ a nice vacation? | Yes, it was great, thanks. |
| 2. <i>Where did you go</i> _____ ? | To Vancouver. |
| 3. _____ there? | Five days. |
| 4. _____ Vancouver? | Yes, very much. |
| 5. _____ ? | I have friends there. I stayed with them. |
| 6. _____ good? | Yes, it was warm and sunny. |
| 7. _____ back? | Yesterday. |

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative, or question).

- It was a good party. *I enjoyed* _____ it. (I / enjoy)
- "*Did you do* _____ the dishes?" (you / do) "No, *I didn't have* _____ time." (I / have)
- "Did you call Alan?" "No, I'm sorry. _____" (I / forget)
- I like your watch. Where _____ it? (you / get)
- I saw Lucy at the party, but _____ to her. (I / speak)
- "_____ a nice weekend?" (you / have) "Yes, I saw a friend of mine."
- Paul was sick yesterday, so _____ to work. (he / go)
- "Is Mary here?" "Yes, _____ here five minutes ago." (she / get)
- Where _____ before he moved here? (Bob / live)
- The restaurant wasn't expensive. _____ very much. (the meal / cost)

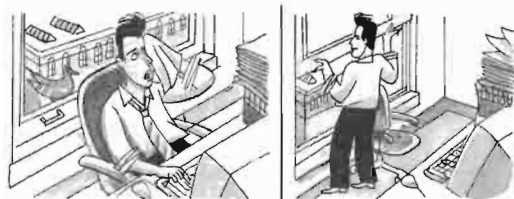
14 Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or past continuous.



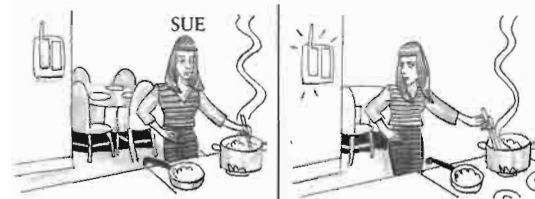
1. It was raining (rain) when we went (go) out.



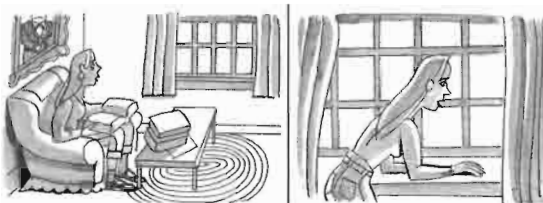
2. When I got to the office, Al and Jan _____ (work).



3. I _____ (open) the window because it was hot.



4. The phone _____ (ring) while Sue _____ (cook) dinner.



5. I _____ (hear) a noise, so I _____ (look) out the window.



6. Tom _____ (look) out the window when the accident _____ (happen).



7. Bruce had a book in his hand, but he _____ (not / read) it. He _____ (watch) TV.



8. Erin bought a magazine, but she _____ (not / read) it. She didn't have time.



9. I _____ (finish) lunch, _____ (pay), and _____ (leave) the restaurant.



10. I _____ (see) Kate this morning. I _____ (walk) along the street, and she _____ (wait) for the bus.

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms.

the simple present (*I work*, etc.) the present continuous (*I am working*, etc.)
 the simple past (*I worked*, etc.) the past continuous (*I was working*, etc.)

- You can turn off the TV. I *'m not watching* (not / watch) it.
- Last night Amy *fell* (fall) asleep while she *was reading* (read).
- Listen! Somebody _____ (play) the piano.
- "Do you have my key?" "No, I _____ (give) it back to you."
- David is very lazy. He _____ (not / like) to work hard.
- Where _____ (your family / go) for vacation last year?
- I _____ (see) Diane yesterday. She _____ (drive) her new car.
- "_____ (you / watch) TV very much?" "No, I don't have a TV."
- A: What _____ (you / do) at six o'clock last Sunday morning?
 B: I was in bed asleep.
- Andy isn't at home very much. He _____ (go) out a lot.
- I _____ (try) to find a job right now. It's very hard.
- I'm tired this morning. I _____ (not / sleep) very well last night.

Present Perfect (*I have done / she has been*, etc.)

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.



5. _____ to Chile?



Yes, I was there a few years ago.

6. How long _____ here?



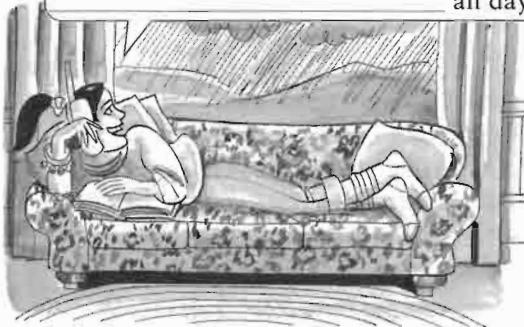
Since 1994.

7. Do you know Al?



Yes, we _____ each other for years.

8. The weather is terrible today. It _____ all day.



17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

1. Mark and Liz are married. They *have been* _____ married for five years.
2. David has been watching TV *since* _____ five o'clock.
3. Mark is at work. He _____ at work since 8:30.
4. "Did you just arrive in Ottawa?" "No, I've been here _____ five days."
5. I've known Amy _____ we were in high school.
6. "My brother lives in Los Angeles." "Really? How long _____ there?"
7. Eric has had the same job _____ twenty years.
8. Some friends are staying with us. They _____ here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1. I've never *ridden a horse* _____.
2. I've *been to Los Angeles* _____ many times.
3. I've _____
(once / twice / a few times / many times)
4. I haven't _____ yet.
5. I've never _____.
6. I've _____ since _____.
7. I've _____ for _____.

19 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

1. A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I *haven't been* there.
2. A: Have you seen Amy?
B: Yes, I *saw* her five minutes ago.
3. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
B: Yes, I *bought* it last week.
4. A: Are you tired this morning?
B: Yes, I *went* to bed late last night.
5. A: Is that new French movie good?
B: Yes, really good. *I've watched* it three times.
6. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
B: No, but it *was* nice yesterday.
7. A: Was Lisa at the party on Saturday?
B: I don't think so. I *didn't see* her there.
8. A: How long does it take to make pizza?
B: I have no idea. I *never make* pizza.
9. A: Is your son still in school?
B: No, he *graduated* college two years ago.
10. A: Is Sylvia married?
B: Yes, she *has been* married for five years.
11. A: Have you heard of George Washington?
B: Of course. He *was* the first President of the United States.

20 Write sentences with the words in parentheses (). Use the present perfect or the simple past.

1. A: Have you been to Thailand?
B: Yes, *I went there last year*. (I / go / there / last year)
2. A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. *I've never been there*. (I / never / there)
3. A: Where is Paul these days?
B: He's living in Chicago. *He moved there last May*. (live / there / since last May)
4. A: Has Erin gone home?
B: Yes, *she left at four o'clock*. (she / leave / at four o'clock)
5. A: New York is my favorite city.
B: Is it? *I've been there many times*. (how many times / you / there?)
6. A: You look tired.
B: Yes, *I've been tired all day*. (I / tired / all day)
7. A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
B: *I found it on the table last night*. (it / on the table / last night)
8. A: Is that restaurant good?
B: Yes, it is. *I've eaten there many times*. (eat / there / many times)
9. A: Paula and Sue are here.
B: They are? *They arrived at 8 o'clock*. (what time / they / arrive?)

21 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences.

1. A: *Have you been* _____ to France?
 B: Yes, many times.
 A: When _____
 the last time?
 B: Two years ago.



2. A: Is this your car?
 B: Yes, it is.
 A: How long _____ it?
 B: It's new. I _____ it yesterday.



3. A: Where do you live?
 B: On Maple Street.
 A: How long _____ there?
 B: Five years. Before that _____
 _____ on Mill Road.
 A: Really? How long _____
 _____ on Mill Road?
 B: About three years.

Where do
you live?



4. A: What do you do?
 B: I work in a store.
 A: How long _____ there?
 B: Almost two years.
 A: What _____
 before that?
 B: I _____ taxi driver.

What do you do?



22 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (yesterday morning) *I was late for work yesterday morning.* _____
 2. (last night) _____
 3. (yesterday afternoon) _____
 4. (. . . days ago) _____
 5. (last week) _____
 6. (last year) _____

Present, Past, and Present Perfect

Units 3-21

23 Which is right?

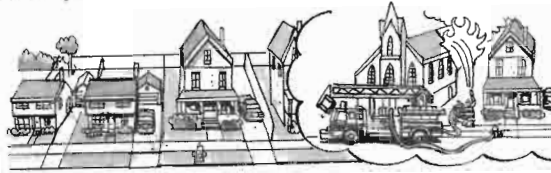
1. "____?" "No, she's on vacation."
 A. Does Sue work B. Is working Sue **C. Is Sue working** D. Does work Sue
2. "Where ____?" "In Dallas."
 A. lives your uncle B. does your uncle live C. your uncle lives
 D. does live your uncle
3. I speak Italian, but ____ French.
 A. I no speak B. I'm not speaking C. I doesn't speak D. I don't speak
4. "Where's Tom?" "____ a shower right now."
 A. He's taking B. He take C. He takes D. He has taken

5. Why ____ angry with me yesterday?
A. were you B. was you C. you were D. have you been
6. My favorite film is *Cleo's Dream*. ____ it four times.
A. I'm seeing B. I see C. I seen D. I've seen
7. I ____ out last night. I was too tired.
A. don't go B. didn't went C. didn't go D. haven't gone
8. Liz is from Chicago. She ____ there all her life.
A. is living B. has lived C. lives D. lived
9. My friend ____ for me when I arrived.
A. waited B. has waited C. was waiting D. has been waiting
10. "How long ____ English?" "Six months."
A. do you learn B. are you learning C. you are learning D. have you been learning
11. Joel is Canadian, but he lives in Chile. He has been there ____ .
A. for three years B. since three years C. three years ago D. during three years
12. "What time ____ ?" "About an hour ago."
A. has Amy called B. Amy called C. did Amy call D. is Amy calling
13. What ____ when you saw her?
A. did Sue wear B. was Sue wearing C. has Sue worn D. was wearing Sue
14. "Can you drive?" "No, ____ a car, but I want to learn."
A. I never drive B. I'm never driving C. I've never driven D. I was never driving
15. I saw Ruth at the train station this morning, but she ____ me.
A. didn't see B. don't see C. hasn't seen D. didn't saw

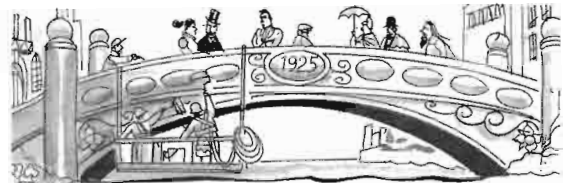
Passive

Units 22-23, Appendix 1

24 Complete the sentences.



1. These houses *were built* _____ 20 years ago. Before that there was a church here, but the church _____ (damage) in a fire and had to _____ (tear down).



2. This bridge _____ (build) in 1925. It _____ (use) by hundreds of people every day. At present the bridge _____ (paint).



3. This street _____ (call) Kennedy Street. It used to _____ (call) Hill Street, but the name _____ (change) in 1964.



4. This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles _____ (make) here since 1931. It is the oldest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles _____ (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

- We were invited to the party, but we didn't go. (invite)
- The museum is very popular. Every year it _____ by thousands of people. (visit)
- Many buildings _____ in the storm last week. (damage)
- A new road is going to _____ next year. (build)
- "Where's your jacket?" "It _____. It will be ready tomorrow." (clean)
- She's famous now, but in a few years her name will _____. (forget)
- "Are you happy with your washing machine?" "Not really. It _____ three times since we bought it." (repair)
- Milk should _____ in the refrigerator. (keep)
- _____ by a snake? (you / ever / bite)
- My bag _____ from my car yesterday afternoon. (steal)

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

- Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
- Somebody stole my car last week. My car _____.
- Somebody wants you on the phone. You _____.
- Somebody has eaten the ice cream. The _____.
- Somebody will repair the machine. The _____.
- Somebody is watching us. We _____.
- Somebody has to buy the food. The _____.

27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

- They are building a new airport now. (build)
- These shirts are clean now. They have been washed OR were washed. (wash)
- "How did you fall?" "Somebody _____ me." (push)
- "How did you fall?" "I _____." (push)
- I can't find my bag. Somebody _____ it! (take)
- My watch is broken. It _____ at the moment. (repair)
- Who _____ the camera? (invent)
- When _____? (the camera / invent)
- The letter was for me, so why _____ it to you? (they / send)
- The information will _____ to you as soon as possible. (send)

Future

Units 26–29

28 Which is right?

- _____ a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
 (A) We're having B. We'll have
- Did you hear about Karen? _____ her job. She told me last week.
 A. She's going to quit B. She'll quit
- There's a program on TV that I want to watch. _____ in five minutes.
 A. It starts B. It's starting
- The weather is nice now, but I think _____ later.
 A. it's raining B. it will rain

5. "What ____ next weekend?" "Nothing special. Why?"
A. are you doing B. do you do
6. "When you see Amy, can you ask her to call me?" "OK, ____ her."
A. I ask B. I'll ask
7. "What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?" "____ tea, please."
A. I have B. I'll have
8. Don't take that newspaper away. ____ it.
A. I'm going to read B. I'll read
9. Rachel is sick, so ____ to the party tomorrow night.
A. she doesn't come B. she isn't coming
10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time ____ ?
A. does her train arrive B. is her train arriving
11. "Will you be at home tomorrow night?" "No, ____."
A. I'm going out B. I go out
12. "____ you at six tomorrow?" "Yes, fine."
A. Do I call B. Shall I call

Past, Present, and Future

Units 3-21, 26-29

29 Complete the sentences.

1. A: *Did you go* _____ (you / go) out last night?
B: No, _____ (I / stay) home.
A: What _____ (you / do) ?
B: _____ (I / watch) TV.
A: _____ (you / go) out tomorrow night?
B: Yes, _____ (I / go) to the movies.
A: What movie _____ (you / see) ?
B: _____ (I / not / know) .
_____ (I / not / decide) yet.

2. A: Are you visiting here?
B: Yes, we are.
A: How long _____
_____ (you / be) here?
B: _____
(we / arrive) yesterday.



- A: And how long _____ (you / stay) ?
B: Until the end of next week.
A: And _____ (you / like) it here?
B: Yes, _____ (we / have) a wonderful time.
3. A: Oh, _____ (I / just / remember) –
_____ (Kim / call) while you were out.
B: _____ (she / always / call) when I'm not here.
_____ (she / leave) a message?
A: No, but _____ (she / want) you to call her back as soon as possible.
B: OK, _____ (I / call) her now.
_____ (you / know) her number?
A: It's in my address book. _____ (I / get) it for you.

4. A: _____ (I / go) out with Chris and Steve tonight.
 _____ (you / want) to come with us?
 B: Yes, where _____ (you / go)?
 A: To the Italian restaurant on North Street.
 _____ (you / ever / eat) there?
 B: Yes, _____ (I / be) there two or three times. In fact I
 _____ (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!
5. A: _____ (I / lose) my glasses again.
 _____ (you / see) them?
 B: _____ (you / wear) them when
 _____ (I / come) in.
 A: Well, _____ (I / not / wear) them
 now, so where are they?
 B: _____ (you / look) in the kitchen?
 A: No. _____ (I / go) and look now.



-ing and to . . .

Units 52–56, 100, 107

30 Which is right?

1. Don't forget _____ off the light when you leave.
 A. turn **B. to turn** C. turning
2. It's late. I should _____ now.
 A. go B. to go C. going
3. I'm sorry but I haven't got time _____ to you now.
 A. for talking B. to talk C. talking
4. Bill is always in the kitchen. He enjoys _____ .
 A. cook B. to cook C. cooking
5. We've decided _____ away for a few days.
 A. go B. to go C. going
6. You're making too much noise. Can you please stop _____ ?
 A. shout B. to shout C. shouting
7. Would you like _____ to dinner on Sunday?
 A. come B. to come C. coming
8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me _____ you.
 A. help B. to help C. helping
9. There's a swimming pool near my house. I go _____ every day.
 A. swim B. to swimming C. swimming
10. Did you use a dictionary _____ the letter?
 A. to translate B. for translating C. for translate
11. I'd love _____ a car like yours.
 A. have B. to have C. to having
12. Could you _____ me with this bag, please?
 A. help B. to help C. helping
13. I don't mind _____ here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
 A. sit B. to sit C. sitting
14. Do you want _____ you?
 A. that I help B. me to help C. me helping

15. I always read the newspaper before ____ work.
 A. start B. to start C. starting
16. I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me ____ better.
 A. feel B. to feel C. feeling
17. Shall I call the restaurant ____ a table?
 A. for reserve B. for reserving C. to reserve
18. Tom looked at me without ____ anything.
 A. say B. saying C. to say

A and the

Units 66, 70-74

31 Complete the sentences.

<p>1 Can you pass <u>the sugar</u>, please?</p> 	<p>2 Do you have _____ ?</p>  <p>No, I can't drive.</p>
<p>3 Have you got any milk?</p> <p>Yes, there's some in _____.</p> 	<p>4 What do you do?</p> <p>I'm _____.</p> 
<p>5 I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to _____.</p> 	<p>6 What did you do last night?</p> <p>We went to _____.</p> 
<p>7 Shall we walk home?</p> <p>No, let's take _____.</p> 	<p>8 Can you play _____ ?</p> <p>Yes, but not very well.</p> 
<p>9 I'm interested in _____.</p> 	<p>10 What's the difference between those cars?</p> <p>Nothing. They're _____.</p> 

32 Write a/an or the if necessary.

1. Who is *the* _____ best player on your team?
2. I don't watch _____ television very often.
3. "Is there *a* _____ bank near here?" "Yes, at *the* _____ end of this block."
4. I can't ride _____ horse.
5. _____ sky is very clear tonight.
6. Do you live here, or are you _____ tourist?
7. What did you have for _____ lunch?
8. Who was _____ first President of _____ United States?
9. "What time is it?" "I don't know. I don't have _____ watch."
10. I'm sorry but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember _____ names.
11. What time is _____ next train to Boston?
12. Kate never writes _____ letters. She prefers to call people.
13. "Where's Sue?" "She's in _____ yard."
14. Excuse me, I'm looking for _____ Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15. Gary was sick _____ last week, so he didn't go to _____ work.
16. Everest is _____ highest mountain in _____ world.
17. I usually listen to _____ radio while I'm having _____ breakfast.
18. I like _____ sports. My favorite sport is _____ basketball.
19. Julia is _____ doctor. Her husband is _____ art teacher.
20. My apartment is on _____ second floor. Turn left at _____ top of _____ stairs, and it's on _____ right.
21. After _____ dinner, we watched _____ television.
22. I've been to _____ northern Mexico, but not to _____ south.

Prepositions

Units 98–103, 106

33 Write a preposition (in/for/by, etc.).

1. Beth is studying math *in* _____ college.
2. What is the longest river _____ Europe?
3. Is there anything _____ television tonight?
4. We arrived _____ the hotel after midnight.
5. "Where's Mike?" "He's _____ vacation."
6. Tom hasn't gotten up yet. He's still _____ bed.
7. Lisa is away. She's been away _____ Monday.
8. The next meeting is _____ April 15.
9. We traveled across Canada _____ train.
10. There's too much sugar _____ my coffee.
11. Kevin lived in Chicago _____ six months. He didn't like it very much.
12. Were there a lot of people _____ the party?
13. I don't know any of the people _____ this photograph.
14. The train was very slow. It stopped _____ every station.
15. I like this room. I like the pictures _____ the walls.
16. "Did you buy that picture?" "No, it was given to me _____ a friend of mine."
17. I'm going away _____ a few days. I'll be back _____ Thursday.
18. Lynn has gone _____ Italy. She's _____ Milan right now.
19. Amy quit school _____ sixteen and got a job _____ a bookstore.

Study Guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative is right (A, B, C, etc.). **Sometimes more than one alternative is correct.**

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The Answer Key to this study guide is on page 296.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

Present

- | | | |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1.1 | _____ . Can you close the window, please?
A. I cold B. I'm cold C. I have cold D. It has cold | 1 |
| 1.2 | Tom _____ in politics.
A. isn't interested B. not interested C. doesn't interested D. don't interest | 1 |
| 1.3 | "_____ ?" "No, she's out."
A. Is at home your mother B. Does your mother at home
C. Is your mother at home D. Are your mother at home | 2 |
| 1.4 | "How much _____ ?" "Fifty cents."
A. are these postcards B. is these postcards C. these postcards
D. do these postcards | 2 |
| 1.5 | Look at Michiko! _____ her new hat.
A. She wearing B. She has wearing C. She is wearing D. She's wearing | 3, 24 |
| 1.6 | You can turn off the television. _____ it.
A. I'm not watch B. I'm not watching C. I not watching D. I don't watching | 3, 24 |
| 1.7 | "_____ today?" "No, he's at home."
A. Is working Luis B. Is work Luis C. Is Luis work D. Is Luis working | 4, 24 |
| 1.8 | Look, there's Hannah! _____ ?
A. Where she is going B. Where she go C. Where's she going
D. Where she going | 4, 24 |
| 1.9 | The earth _____ around the sun.
A. going B. go C. goes D. does go E. is go | 5, 24 |
| 1.10 | We _____ late on weekends.
A. often sleep B. sleep often C. often sleeping D. are often sleep | 5, 24, 95 |
| 1.11 | We _____ television very often.
A. not watch B. doesn't watch C. don't watch D. don't watching | 6, 24 |
| 1.12 | "_____ on Saturdays?" "No, not usually."
A. Do you work B. Are you work C. Does you work D. Do you working | 7, 24 |
| 1.13 | I don't understand this sentence. What _____ ?
A. mean this word B. means this word C. does mean this word
D. does this word mean E. this word means | 7, 24 |

- 1.14 Please be quiet. _____ .
A. I working B. I work C. I'm working D. I'm work 8, 24
- 1.15 Tom _____ a shower every morning.
A. takes B. taking C. is taking D. take 8
- 1.16 What _____ on weekends?
A. do you usually B. are you usually doing C. are you usually do
D. do you usually do E. you do usually 7, 8, 24
- 1.17 Li Jing isn't feeling well. _____ a headache.
A. She have B. She have got C. She has D. She's got 9, 59
- 1.18 Mr. and Mrs. Harris _____ any children.
A. don't have B. doesn't have C. no have D. haven't got 9, 59

Past

- 2.1 The weather _____ last week.
A. is nice B. was nice C. were nice D. nice E. had nice 10
- 2.2 Why _____ late this morning?
A. you was B. did you C. was you D. you were E. were you 10
- 2.3 Terry _____ in a bank from 1987 to 1998.
A. work B. working C. works D. worked E. was work 11, 24
- 2.4 Caroline _____ to the movies three times last week.
A. go B. went C. goes D. got E. was 11
- 2.5 I _____ television yesterday.
A. didn't watch B. didn't watched C. wasn't watch D. don't watch
E. didn't watching 12, 24
- 2.6 "How _____?" "I don't know. I didn't see it"
A. happened the accident B. did happen the accident C. does the accident happen
D. did the accident happen E. the accident happened 12
- 2.7 What _____ at 11:30 yesterday?
A. were you doing B. was you doing C. you were doing D. were you do
E. you was doing 13
- 2.8 Eric was reading a book when the phone _____.
A. ringing B. rang C. was ringing D. was ring 14
- 2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They _____ at the bus stop.
A. waiting B. waited C. were waiting D. was waiting E. were waited 14
- 2.10 Dave _____ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.
A. working B. works C. worked D. use to work E. used to work 15

Present Perfect

- 3.1 My mother _____ by plane.
A. has never travel B. has never traveled C. is never traveled
D. has never been traveled E. have never traveled 16, 24

- 3.2 _____ that woman before, but I can't remember where. 16, 24
 A. I see B. I seen C. I've saw D. I've seen E. I've seeing
- 3.3 "How long _____ married?" "Since 1992." 17
 A. you are B. you have been C. has you been D. are you
 E. have you been
- 3.4 "Do you know Lynn?" "Yes, _____ her for a long time." 17
 A. I knew B. I've known C. I know D. I am knowing
- 3.5 Richard has been in Canada _____. 18, 99
 A. for six months B. since six months C. six months ago D. in six months
- 3.6 "When did Tom go out?" "_____." 18
 A. For ten minutes B. Since ten minutes C. Ten minutes ago
 D. In ten minutes
- 3.7 "Is Peter here?" "No, _____ home." 19, 21
 A. he went B. he have gone C. he's went D. he's gone E. he go
- 3.8 "Are you hungry?" "No, _____ dinner." 20
 A. I just had B. I just have C. I just having D. I've just had
- 3.9 We _____ a vacation last year. 21
 A. don't take B. haven't taken C. hasn't taken D. didn't take
 E. didn't took
- 3.10 Where _____ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you. 21
 A. you were B. you have been C. was you D. have you been E. were you

Passive

- 4.1 This house _____ 100 years ago. 22, 24
 A. is built B. is building C. was building D. was built E. built
- 4.2 We _____ to the party last week. 22, 23
 A. didn't invite B. didn't invited C. weren't invited D. wasn't invited
 E. haven't been invited
- 4.3 "Where _____ born?" "In Los Angeles." 22
 A. you are B. you were C. was you D. are you E. were you
- 4.4 I took the bus this morning because my car _____. 23
 A. is being repaired B. is repairing C. has been repaired D. repaired
- 4.5 I can't find my keys. I think _____. 23
 A. they've been stolen B. they are stolen C. they've stolen
 D. they're being stolen

Verb Forms

- 5.1 It _____, so we went out. 24
 A. wasn't rained B. wasn't rain C. didn't raining D. wasn't raining
- 5.2 Somebody _____ this window. 25
 A. has broke B. has broken C. has breaked D. has break

Future

- 6.1 Andrew _____ tennis tomorrow. 26
A. is playing B. play C. plays D. is play
- 6.2 _____ out tonight? 26
A. Are you going B. Are you go C. Do you go D. Go you E. Do you going
- 6.3 What time _____ tonight? 26
A. is the concert start B. does the concert start C. starts the concert
D. does the concert starting
- 6.4 What _____ to the party tonight? 27
A. are you wearing B. are you going to wear C. do you wear
D. you are going to wear
- 6.5 I think Diana _____ her driver's test. 28
A. passes B. will pass C. will be pass D. will passing
- 6.6 _____ to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? 26, 28
A. We go B. We'll go C. We're going D. We will going
- 6.7 " _____ you tomorrow, OK?" "OK. Goodbye." 29
A. I call B. I'll call C. I'm calling D. I calling
- 6.8 There's a good program on TV tonight. _____ it. 27, 29
A. I watch B. I'll watch C. I'm going to watch D. I'll watching
- 6.9 It's a nice day. _____ for a walk? 29
A. Do we go B. Shall we go C. Should we go

Modals, Imperatives, etc.

- 7.1 _____ to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. 30
A. I'll go B. I'm going C. I may go D. I might go
- 7.2 " _____ here?" "Sure." 30, 31
A. Can I sit B. Do I sit C. May I sit D. Can I to sit
- 7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Scott and Angela _____. 31
A. can't come B. can't to come C. can't coming D. couldn't come
- 7.4 Before Shu Ling came to Canada, she _____ understand much English. 31
A. can B. can't C. not D. couldn't E. doesn't
- 7.5 You worked ten hours today. You _____ tired. 32
A. must B. can C. must be D. can be E. must to be
- 7.6 Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He _____ a car. 32
A. must have B. must not have C. must not to have D. no have
- 7.7 They were in a dangerous situation. They _____ careful. 32, 34
A. must to be B. must be C. have to be D. had to be E. had be
- 7.8 I _____ study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies. 33
A. must B. have to C. should D. ought to E. will
- 7.9 What time _____ go to the dentist tomorrow? 34
A. you must B. you have to C. have you to D. do you have to

- 7.10 “ _____ some coffee?” “No, thank you.”
A. Are you liking B. You like C. Would you like D. Do you like
- 7.11 I don't really want to go out. _____ home.
A. I rather stay B. I'd rather stay C. I'd rather to stay D. I'd prefer to stay
- 7.12 Stay here. Please _____ .
A. don't go B. you no go C. you not to go D. go not
- 7.13 It's a nice day. _____ out.
A. Let's to go B. Let's go C. Let's to go D. We go

There and it

- 8.1 Excuse me, _____ a hotel near here?
A. has there B. is there C. there is D. is it
- 8.2 _____ a lot of accidents on this road.
A. Have B. It has C. There have D. They are E. There are
- 8.3 When I got home, I was hungry, but _____ anything to eat.
A. there wasn't B. there weren't C. it wasn't D. there hasn't been
- 8.4 _____ three miles from our house to the mall.
A. It's B. It has C. There is D. There are
- 8.5 _____ true that you're moving to Australia?
A. Is there B. Is it C. Is D. Are you

Auxiliary Verbs

- 9.1 I haven't seen the movie but my sister _____ .
A. does B. is C. has seen D. has E. hasn't
- 9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Megan _____ .
A. does B. doesn't C. do D. does like E. likes
- 9.3 “Nicole got married last week.” “ _____ ? Really?”
A. Got she B. She got C. She did D. She has
- 9.4 You haven't met my mother, _____ ?
A. haven't you B. have you C. did you D. you have E. you haven't
- 9.5 Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers _____ .
A. too B. either C. neither D. never
- 9.6 “I'd like to go to Australia.” “ _____ .”
A. So do I B. So am I C. So would I D. Neither do I E. So I would
- 9.7 Sue _____ much on weekends.
A. don't B. doesn't C. don't do D. doesn't do

Questions

- 10.1 “When _____ ?” “I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.”
A. did the telephone invent B. was invented the telephone
C. was the telephone invented D. the telephone was invented

35

36

37

37

38

38

39

40

40

41

41

42

42

43

43

44

45

- 10.2 "I broke my finger last week." "How _____ that?"
A. did you B. you did C. you did do D. did you do 45
- 10.3 Why _____ me last night? I was waiting for you to call.
A. didn't you call B. you no call C. you don't call D. you didn't call 45
- 10.4 "Who _____ in this house?" "I don't know."
A. lives B. does live C. does lives D. living 46
- 10.5 What _____ when you told him the story?
A. said Paul B. did Paul say C. Paul said D. did Paul said 46
- 10.6 "Tom's father is in the hospital." "_____?"
A. In which hospital he is B. In which hospital he is in
C. Which hospital he is in D. Which hospital is he in 47
- 10.7 Did you have a good vacation? _____?
A. How was the weather like B. What was the weather like
C. What the weather was like D. Was the weather like 47
- 10.8 _____ taller – Bill or Sam?
A. Who is B. What is C. Which is D. Who has 48
- 10.9 There are four umbrellas here. _____ is yours?
A. What B. Who C. Which D. How E. Which one 48, 76
- 10.10 How long _____ to get from Washington to New York by plane?
A. is it B. does it need C. does it take D. it wants 49
- 10.11 I don't remember what _____ at the party.
A. Dawn was wearing B. was wearing Dawn C. was Dawn wearing 50
- 10.12 "Do you know _____?" "Yes, I think so."
A. if Jack is at home B. is Jack at home C. whether Jack is at home
D. that Jack is at home 50

Reported Speech

- 11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said _____ me but he didn't.
A. he call B. he call C. he'll call D. he's going to call E. he would call 51
- 11.2 "Why did Tim go to bed so early?" "He _____."
A. said he was tired B. said that he was tired C. said me he was tired
D. told me he was tired 51

-ing and to . . .

- 12.1 You shouldn't _____ so hard.
A. working B. work C. to work D. worked 52
- 12.2 I _____ now. See you tomorrow.
A. must to go B. have go C. have to going D. have to go 52
- 12.3 Tina has decided _____ her house.
A. sell B. to sell C. selling D. to selling 53
- 12.4 I don't mind _____ early.
A. get up B. to get up C. getting up D. to getting up 53

- 12.5 Do you like _____ early? 53
A. get up B. to get up C. getting up D. to getting up
- 12.6 Do you want _____ you some money? 54
A. me lend B. me lending C. me to lend D. that I lend
- 12.7 He's very funny. He makes _____. 54
A. me laugh B. me laughing C. me to laugh D. that I laugh
- 12.8 Kelly went to the store _____ a newspaper. 55
A. for buy B. for to buy C. for buying D. to buy E. buy

Go, get, do, make, and have

- 13.1 It's a nice day. Let's go _____. 56
A. for a swim B. on a swim C. to swimming D. swimming
- 13.2 I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she _____ better soon. 57
A. has B. makes C. gets D. goes
- 13.3 Kate _____ the car and drove away. 57
A. went into B. went in C. got in D. got into
- 13.4 "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll _____ it. 58
A. do B. make C. have
- 13.5 I'm sorry, I _____ a mistake. 58
A. did B. made C. got D. had
- 13.6 "_____ a nice weekend?" "Yes, thanks. It was very nice!" 59
A. Have you B. Had you C. Do you have D. Did you have

Pronouns and Possessives

- 14.1 I don't want this book. You can have _____. 60, 63
A. it B. them C. her D. him
- 14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go with _____? 60, 63
A. her B. they C. them D. him
- 14.3 I saw Mr. and Mrs. Lee with _____ daughter. 61, 63
A. her B. his C. they D. their
- 14.4 Hawaii is famous for _____ beaches. 61
A. his B. its C. it's D. their
- 14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Mary gave me _____. 62, 63
A. her B. hers C. her umbrella D. she's
- 14.6 I went to the movies with a friend of _____. 62, 63
A. mine B. my C. me D. I
- 14.7 We had a good vacation. We enjoyed _____. 64
A. us B. our C. ours D. ourselves
- 14.8 Kim and Amy are good friends. They know _____ well. 64
A. each other B. them C. themselves D. theirselves

- 14.9 Have you met _____?
A. the wife of Mr. Suzuki B. Mr. Suzuki wife C. the wife Mr. Suzuki
D. Mr. Suzuki's wife E. the Mr. Suzuki's wife
- 14.10 Have you seen _____?
A. the car of my parents B. my parent's car C. my parents' car
D. my parents car

A and the

- 15.1 I'm going to buy _____.
A. hat and umbrella B. a hat and a umbrella C. a hat and an umbrella
D. an hat and an umbrella
- 15.2 "What do you do?" "_____."
A. I dentist B. I'm a dentist C. I'm dentist D. I do dentist
- 15.3 I'm going shopping. I need _____.
A. some new jeans B. a new jeans C. a new pair of jeans D. a new pair jeans
- 15.4 I like the people here. _____ very friendly.
A. She is B. They are C. They is D. It is
- 15.5 I'm very thirsty. I need _____.
A. some water B. a water C. a glass of water
- 15.6 I need _____ about hotels in Mexico City.
A. some information B. some informations C. an information
- 15.7 We enjoyed our vacation. _____ was very nice.
A. Hotel B. A hotel C. An hotel D. The hotel
- 15.8 The table is in _____.
A. middle of room B. middle of the room C. the middle of the room
D. the middle of room
- 15.9 What did you have for _____?
A. the breakfast B. breakfast C. a breakfast
- 15.10 I finish _____ at five o'clock every day.
A. the work B. work C. a work
- 15.11 I never go to _____, but I go to the movies a lot.
A. the theater B. theater C. a theater
- 15.12 We don't eat _____ very often.
A. the meat B. meat C. a meat D. some meat
- 15.13 _____ is in New York.
A. The Times Square B. Times Square
- 15.14 My friends are staying at _____.
A. the Milton Hotel B. Milton Hotel

Determiners and Pronouns

- 16.1 "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, _____ nice."
A. it's B. this is C. that's

- 16.2 "Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, there's _____ on the corner." 76
A. some B. it C. one D. a one
- 16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have _____? 76
A. clean one B. a clean one C. clean D. a clean
- 16.4 There's _____ in the fridge. 77
A. a milk B. some milk C. any milk
- 16.5 "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have _____." 77
A. one B. some C. any
- 16.6 Karen and Steve _____. 78, 79
A. have no children B. don't have no children C. don't have any children
D. have any children
- 16.7 "How much money do you have?" "_____." 78
A. No B. No one C. Any D. None
- 16.8 There's _____ in the room. It's empty. 79, 80
A. anybody B. nobody C. anyone D. no one
- 16.9 "What did you say?" "_____." 79, 80
A. Nothing B. Nobody C. Anything D. Not anything
- 16.10 I'm hungry. I want _____. 80
A. something for eat B. something to eat C. something for eating
- 16.11 "How often do you read a newspaper?" "_____." 81
A. All day B. All days C. Every days D. Every day
- 16.12 _____ friends. 81
A. Everybody need B. Everybody needs C. Everyone need D. Everyone needs
- 16.13 _____ children like to play. 81
A. Most B. The most C. Most of D. The most of
- 16.14 I like _____ those pictures. 83
A. both B. both of C. either D. either of
- 16.15 I haven't read _____ these books. 83
A. neither B. neither of C. either D. either of
- 16.16 Do you have _____ friends? 84
A. a lot of B. much C. many D. much of E. many of
- 16.17 We like films, so we go to the movies _____. 84
A. a lot of B. much C. many D. a lot
- 16.18 There were _____ people in the theatre. It was almost empty. 85
A. a little B. few C. little D. a few of
- 16.19 They have _____ money, but they're not rich. 85
A. a little B. a few C. few D. little E. little of

Adjectives and Adverbs

- 17.1 Do you speak any _____? 86
A. foreign languages B. languages foreign C. languages foreigners

- 17.2 He ate his dinner very _____ .
A. quick B. quicker C. quickly 87
- 17.3 You speak English very _____ .
A. good B. fluent C. well D. slow 87
- 17.4 Helen wants a _____ .
A. more big car B. car more big C. car bigger D. bigger car 88
- 17.5 "Do you feel better today?" "No, I feel _____ ."
A. good B. worse C. more bad D. more worse 88
- 17.6 Athens is older _____ Rome.
A. as B. than C. that D. of 89
- 17.7 I can run faster _____ .
A. than him B. that he can C. than he can D. as he can E. as he 89
- 17.8 Tennis isn't _____ soccer.
A. popular as B. popular than C. so popular that D. as popular as 90
- 17.9 The weather today is the same _____ yesterday.
A. as B. that C. than D. like 90
- 17.10 The Best West is _____ in town.
A. the more expensive motel B. the most expensive motel
C. the motel most expensive D. the motel the more expensive 91
- 17.11 The movie is very bad. I think it's the _____ movie I've ever seen.
A. worse B. baddest C. most bad D. worst E. more worse 91
- 17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You have _____ .
A. enough money B. money enough C. enough of money 92
- 17.13 Is your English _____ a conversation?
A. enough good to have B. good enough for have C. enough good for
D. good enough to have 92
- 17.14 I'm _____ out.
A. too tired for go B. too much tired for going C. too tired to go
D. too much tired to go 93

Word Order

- 18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She _____ .
A. reads every day the newspaper B. reads the newspaper every day
C. every day reads the newspaper 94
- 18.2 "Do you ever take the bus to work?" "No, _____ ."
A. I go to work always by car B. I go always to work by car
C. I always go to work by car D. always I go to work by car 95
- 18.3 I'm very healthy. _____ .
A. I am sick never B. I am never sick C. I never am sick D. Never I am
sick 95
- 18.4 "Where's Diane?" "She _____ ."
A. isn't here yet B. isn't here already C. isn't here still 96

- 18.5 I locked the door and I gave _____ .
A. Liz the keys B. to Liz the keys C. the keys to Liz D. the keys Liz

Prepositions

- 19.1 Goodbye! See you _____ .
A. Friday B. at Friday C. in Friday D. on Friday
- 19.2 Hurry! The train leaves _____ five minutes.
A. at B. on C. from D. after E. in
- 19.3 "How long will you be away?" " _____ Monday."
A. On B. To C. Until D. Till E. Since
- 19.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played _____ two hours.
A. in B. for C. since D. during
- 19.5 I always have breakfast before _____ to work.
A. I go B. go C. to go D. going
- 19.6 Write your name _____ the top of the page.
A. at B. on C. in D. to
- 19.7 There are a lot of apples _____ those trees.
A. at B. on C. in D. to
- 19.8 What's the largest city _____ the world?
A. at B. on C. in D. of
- 19.9 The office is _____ the first floor.
A. at B. on C. in D. to
- 19.10 I want to go _____ Mexico next year.
A. at B. on C. in D. to
- 19.11 I'm staying _____ tonight.
A. home B. at home C. to home D. in home
- 19.12 What time did you arrive _____ the hotel?
A. at B. on C. in D. to
- 19.13 "Where is Dennis in this picture?" "He's _____ Bob."
A. at front of B. in the front of C. in front of D. in front from
- 19.14 I climbed _____ the wall and into the yard.
A. on B. through C. across D. over E. above
- 19.15 Tracy isn't at work this week. She's _____ vacation.
A. on B. in C. for D. to E. at
- 19.16 Do you like traveling _____ ?
A. with train B. with the train C. in train D. on train E. by train
- 19.17 Tina is very bad _____ writing letters.
A. on B. with C. at D. in E. for
- 19.18 Tom left without _____ goodbye.
A. say B. saying C. to say D. that he said

97

98

98

99

100

100

101

101

102

102

103

103

103

104

105

105

106

107

107

- 19.19 I never get letters. Nobody writes _____ .
A. for me B. to me C. at me D. me
- 19.20 "Do you like to eat in restaurants?" "It depends _____ the restaurant."
A. in B. at C. of D. on E. over

Two-Word Verbs

- 20.1 The car stopped and two women got _____ .
A. off B. down C. out D. out of
- 20.2 It was cold, so I _____ .
A. put on my coat B. put my coat on C. put me my coat D. put my coat
- 20.3 I have Diane's keys. I have to _____ to her.
A. give back they B. give them back C. give back them D. give it back

Conjunctions and Clauses

- 21.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when _____ more time.
A. I have B. I had C. I'll have D. I'm going to have
- 21.2 _____ late tomorrow, don't wait for me.
A. If I'm B. If I'll be C. When I'm D. When I'll be
- 21.3 I don't know the answer. If I _____ the answer, I'd tell you.
A. know B. would know C. have known D. knew
- 21.4 I like this jacket. _____ it if it weren't so expensive.
A. I buy B. I'll buy C. I bought D. I'd bought E. I'd buy
- 21.5 Amy lives in a house _____ is 100 years old.
A. who B. that C. which D. what
- 21.6 The people _____ work in the office are very friendly.
A. who B. that C. which D. what
- 21.7 Did you find the book _____ ?
A. who you wanted B. that you wanted C. what you wanted D. you wanted
- 21.8 I met _____ can speak six languages.
A. a woman who B. a woman which C. a woman D. a woman she

Answer Key to Additional Exercises

1

3. Kate is a doctor.
4. The children are asleep.
5. Bill isn't hungry.
6. The books aren't (are not) on the table.
7. The hotel is near the station.
8. The bus isn't crowded.

2

3. she's (she is)
4. Where are
5. Is he
6. It's (It is)
7. I'm (I am) or I'm not (I am not), I'm (I am)
8. What color is
9. Is it
10. Are you
11. How much are

3

3. He's taking (He is taking) a bath
4. Are the children playing?
5. Is it raining?
6. They're coming (They are coming) now.
7. Why are you standing here?
I'm waiting (I am waiting) for somebody.

4

4. Chris doesn't want (does not want)
5. Do you want
6. Does Amy live
7. Sarah knows
8. I don't travel (do not travel)
9. do you usually get up
10. They don't go out (do not go out)
11. Adam always leaves
12. does Kim do; She works

5

3. She's (She is) a student.
4. She doesn't have (does not have) a car.
5. She goes out a lot.
6. She has a lot of friends.
7. She doesn't like (does not like) Toronto.
8. She likes to dance.
9. She isn't / 's not (She is not) interested in sports.

6

1. Are you; do you live; Do you have; old is she
2. How old are you; What do you do; Do you like; Do you have; Do you drive
3. What's (What is) his name; What does he do; Does he live

7

4. is 32 years old
5. He has six sisters.
6. We often watch TV at night.
7. Amy never wears a hat.
8. My car has a flat tire. or My car's got (car has got) a flat tire.
9. These flowers are beautiful.
10. Mary speaks German very well.

8

3. are you cooking
4. plays
5. I'm leaving (I am leaving)
6. It's raining (It is raining).
7. I don't watch (do not watch)
8. we're looking (we are looking)
9. do you pronounce

9

2. we go
3. is shining
4. are you going
5. do you take
6. She writes
7. I never read
8. They're watching
9. She's talking
10. do you usually have
11. He's visiting
12. I don't drink

10

2. went
3. found
4. was
5. had/took
6. told
7. gave
8. were
9. thought
10. invited/asked

11

3. was good at sports
4. He played basketball.
5. He didn't work (did not work) hard in school.
6. He had a lot of friends.

7. He didn't have (did not have) a bicycle.
8. He wasn't (was not) a quiet child.

12

3. How long were you
4. Did you like
5. Where did you stay
6. Was the weather
7. When did you get

13

3. I forgot.
4. did you get
5. I didn't speak (did not speak)
6. Did you have
7. he didn't go (did not go)
8. she got
9. did Bob live
10. The meal didn't cost (did not cost)

14

2. were working
3. opened
4. rang; was cooking
5. heard; looked
6. was looking; happened
7. wasn't reading (was not reading); was watching
8. didn't read (did not read)
9. finished; paid; left
10. saw; was walking; was waiting

15

3. is playing
4. gave
5. doesn't like (does not like)
6. did your family go
7. saw; was driving
8. Do you watch
9. were you doing
10. goes
11. 'm trying (am trying)
12. didn't sleep (did not sleep)

16

2. haven't read (have not read) or didn't read (did not read) or 've never read (have never read)
3. Have you seen or Did you see
4. 've had (have had)
5. Have you [ever] been or Did you [ever] go

6. have you lived
 7. 've known (have known)
 8. 's been raining (has been raining)
or 's rained (has rained)

17

3. has been 6. has he lived
 4. for 7. for
 5. since 8. 've been (have been)

18

Sample sentences:

3. played golf a few times
 4. had dinner
 5. been to Australia
 6. lived here; I was born
 7. worked here; three years

19

3. bought/got
 4. went
 5. I've seen (I have seen)
 6. was
 7. didn't see (did not see)
 8. 've never made (have never made)
 9. finished / graduated from
 10. 's been (has been)
 11. was

20

3. He's lived (He has lived) there since last May.
 4. she left at four o'clock
 5. How many times have you been there?
 6. I've been/felt (I have been/felt) tired all day
 7. It was on the table last night.
 8. I've eaten (I have eaten) there many times. *or* We've (We have) ...
 9. What time did they arrive?

21

1. was
 2. have you had/owned; bought/got
 3. have you lived; I lived/was *or* we lived/were; did you live *or* were you
 4. have you worked/been; did you do; was

22

Sample sentences:

2. I didn't go out (did not go out) last night.
 3. I was at work yesterday afternoon.
 4. I went to a party a few days ago.
 5. It was my birthday last week.
 6. I went to Europe last year.

23

- | | | |
|------|-------|-------|
| 2. B | 7. C | 12. C |
| 3. D | 8. B | 13. B |
| 4. A | 9. C | 14. C |
| 5. A | 10. D | 15. A |
| 6. D | 11. A | |

24

1. was damaged; be torn down
 2. was built; is used; is being painted
 3. is called; be called; was changed
 4. have been made; are produced

25

2. is visited
 3. were damaged
 4. be built
 5. 's being cleaned (is being cleaned)
 6. be forgotten
 7. 's been repaired (has been repaired) *or* 's had to be repaired (has had to be repaired)
 8. be kept
 9. Have you ever been bitten
 10. was stolen

26

2. was stolen last week
 3. 're wanted (are wanted) on the phone
 4. ice cream has been eaten
 5. machine will be repaired
 6. 're being watched (are being watched)
 7. food has to be bought

27

3. pushed
 4. was pushed
 5. took *or* 's taken (has taken)
 6. 's being repaired (is being repaired)
 7. invented
 8. was the camera invented
 9. did they send
 10. be sent

28

- | | | |
|-------|------|--------|
| 2. A | 6. B | 10. A* |
| 3. A* | 7. B | 11. A |
| 4. B | 8. A | 12. B |
| 5. A | 9. B | |

* The present continuous (B) is also possible, but it is less common.

29

1. I stayed; did you do; I watched; Are you going out; I'm going (I am going); are you seeing *or* are you going to see; I don't know (do not

know); I haven't decided (have not decided)

2. have you been; We arrived; are you staying *or* are you going to stay; do you like; we're having (we are having)
 3. I just remembered; Kim called; She always calls *or* She's always calling (She is always calling); Did she leave; she wants *or* she wanted; I'll call (I will call); Do you know; I'll get (I will get)
 4. I'm going (I am going); Do you want; are you going; Have you ever eaten; 've been (have been); went
 5. I lost *or* I've lost (I have lost); Have you seen; You were wearing; I came in; I'm not wearing (I am not wearing); Have you looked; I'll go (I will go)

30

- | | | |
|------|-------|-------|
| 2. A | 8. A | 14. B |
| 3. B | 9. C | 15. C |
| 4. C | 10. A | 16. A |
| 5. B | 11. B | 17. C |
| 6. C | 12. A | 18. B |
| 7. B | 13. C | |

31

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| 2. a car | 6. the movies |
| 3. the refrigerator/fridge | 7. a taxi |
| 4. a teacher | 8. the piano |
| 5. school | 9. computers |
| | 10. the same |

32

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 4. a | 14. the |
| 5. The | 15. —; — |
| 6. a | 16. the; the |
| 7. — | 17. the; — |
| 8. the; the | 18. —; — |
| 9. a | 19. a; an |
| 10. — | 20. the; the; |
| 11. the | the; the |
| 12. — | 21. —; — |
| 13. the | 22. —; the |

33

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 2. in | 11. for |
| 3. on | 12. at |
| 4. at | 13. in |
| 5. on | 14. at |
| 6. in | 15. on |
| 7. since | 16. by |
| 8. on | 17. for; on |
| 9. by | 18. to; in |
| 10. in | 19. at; in |

Answer Key to Study Guide

Present

1.1 B	1.10 A
1.2 A	1.11 C
1.3 C	1.12 A
1.4 A	1.13 D
1.5 C/D	1.14 C
1.6 B	1.15 A
1.7 D	1.16 D
1.8 C	1.17 C/D
1.9 C	1.18 A/D

Past

2.1 B	2.6 D
2.2 E	2.7 A
2.3 D	2.8 B
2.4 B	2.9 C
2.5 A	2.10 C/E

Present Perfect

3.1 B	3.6 C
3.2 D	3.7 A/D
3.3 E	3.8 A/D
3.4 B	3.9 D
3.5 A	3.10 E

Passive

4.1 D	4.4 A
4.2 C	4.5 A
4.3 E	

Verb Forms

5.1 D	5.2 B
-------	-------

Future

6.1 A	6.6 C
6.2 A	6.7 B
6.3 B	6.8 C
6.4 A/B	6.9 B/C
6.5 B	

Modals, Imperatives, etc.

7.1 C/D	7.8 C/D
7.2 A/C	7.9 D
7.3 A	7.10 C
7.4 D	7.11 B/D
7.5 C	7.12 A
7.6 B	7.13 B
7.7 D	

There and it

8.1 B	8.4 A
8.2 E	8.5 B
8.3 A	

Auxiliary Verbs

9.1 D	9.5 B
9.2 A	9.6 C
9.3 C	9.7 D
9.4 B	

Questions

10.1 C	10.7 B
10.2 D	10.8 A
10.3 A	10.9 C/E
10.4 A	10.10 C
10.5 B	10.11 A
10.6 D	10.12 A/C

Reported Speech

11.1 E	11.2 A/B/D
--------	------------

-ing and to . . .

12.1 B	12.5 B/C
12.2 D	12.6 C
12.3 B	12.7 A
12.4 C	12.8 D

Go, get, do, make, and have

13.1 A/D	13.4 A
13.2 C	13.5 B
13.3 C/D	13.6 D

Pronouns and Possessives

14.1 A	14.6 A
14.2 C	14.7 D
14.3 D	14.8 A
14.4 B	14.9 D
14.5 B/C	14.10 C

A and the

15.1 C	15.8 C
15.2 B	15.9 B
15.3 A/C	15.10 B
15.4 B	15.11 A
15.5 A/C	15.12 B
15.6 A	15.13 B
15.7 D	15.14 A

Determiners and Pronouns

16.1 C	16.11 D
16.2 C	16.12 B/D
16.3 B	16.13 A
16.4 B	16.14 A/B
16.5 C	16.15 D
16.6 A/C	16.16 A/C
16.7 D	16.17 D
16.8 B/D	16.18 B
16.9 A	16.19 A
16.10 B	

Adjectives and Adverbs

17.1 A	17.8 D
17.2 C	17.9 A
17.3 C	17.10 B
17.4 D	17.11 D
17.5 B	17.12 A
17.6 B	17.13 D
17.7 A/C	17.14 C

Word Order

18.1 B	18.4 A
18.2 C	18.5 A/C
18.3 B	

Prepositions

19.1 A/D	19.11 A/B
19.2 E	19.12 A
19.3 C/D	19.13 C
19.4 B	19.14 D
19.5 A/D	19.15 A
19.6 A	19.16 E
19.7 B	19.17 C
19.8 C	19.18 B
19.9 B	19.19 B/D
19.10 D	19.20 D

Two-Word Verbs

20.1 C	20.3 B
20.2 A/B	

Conjunctions and Clauses

21.1 A	21.5 B/C
21.2 A	21.6 A/B
21.3 D	21.7 B/D
21.4 E	21.8 A